

UNCLASSIFIED



z/OS RACF STIG

Version: 7

Release: 2

24 Jun 2020

Table of Contents

Rule Version (STIG-ID): CE000010	6
Rule Version (STIG-ID): CE000020	8
Rule Version (STIG-ID): CE000030	9
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000010	10
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000020	12
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000030	14
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000040	16
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000050	19
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000060	20
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000070	22
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000080	25
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000090	27
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000100	29
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000110	31
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000120	33
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000130	35
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000140	38
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000150	40
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000160	42
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000170	44
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000180	46
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000190	47
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000200	49
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000210	53
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000220	54
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000230	55
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000240	56
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000250	58
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000260	60
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000270	62
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000280	64
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000290	66
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000300	67
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000310	69
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000320	71
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000330	73
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000340	74
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000350	76
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000360	78
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000370	80
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000380	82
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000390	84
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000400	88
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000410	89
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000420	92
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000430	94
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000440	96
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000450	98
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000460	100
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000470	102
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000480	104
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000490	106
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000500	108
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000510	110
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000520	112
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000530	114
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000540	115
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000550	117
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000560	118
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000570	119
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000580	121
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000590	123
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000600	125
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000610	127
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000620	128
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000630	130
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000640	131
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000650	132
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000660	134

Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000670	136
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000680	138
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000690	140
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000700	143
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000710	145
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000720	147
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000730	149
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000740	154
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000750	156
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000760	157
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000770	158
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000780	160
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000790	162
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000800	163
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000810	165
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000820	167
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000830	168
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000840	169
Rule Version (STIG-ID): ES000850	171
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000010	174
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000020	176
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000030	179
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000040	181
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000050	184
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000060	187
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000070	190
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000080	192
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000090	194
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000100	196
Rule Version (STIG-ID): FT000120	198
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000010	200
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000020	201
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000030	205
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000040	207
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000050	212
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000060	217
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000070	218
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000080	221
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000090	225
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000100	229
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000110	232
Rule Version (STIG-ID): JS000120	235
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000010	238
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000020	241
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000030	243
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000040	245
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000050	246
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000060	247
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000070	248
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000080	249
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000090	250
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000100	251
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000110	252
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000120	255
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000140	256
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000150	257
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000160	258
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000170	259
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000180	260
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000190	262
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000200	264
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000210	265
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000220	266
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000230	267
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000240	268
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000250	269
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000260	270
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000270	272
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000280	274
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000290	275
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000300	277
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000310	278
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000320	280

Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000330.....	281
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000340.....	282
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000350.....	283
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000360.....	285
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000370.....	286
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000400.....	287
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000410.....	288
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000420.....	289
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000430.....	290
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000440.....	291
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000450.....	292
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000460.....	293
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000470.....	294
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000480.....	295
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000490.....	296
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000500.....	297
Rule Version (STIG-ID): OS000510.....	298
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000010.....	299
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000020.....	300
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000030.....	301
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000040.....	303
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000050.....	305
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SH000060.....	306
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SL000010.....	307
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SL000020.....	310
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SL000030.....	311
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SM000010.....	313
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SM000020.....	315
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SM000030.....	317
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SM000040.....	318
Rule Version (STIG-ID): SM000050.....	324
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000010.....	325
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000020.....	327
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000030.....	328
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000040.....	331
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000050.....	335
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000060.....	336
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000070.....	337
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000080.....	339
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000090.....	341
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TC000100.....	343
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TN000010.....	345
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TN000020.....	347
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TN000030.....	349
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TN000040.....	351
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TN000050.....	354
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TS000010.....	357
Rule Version (STIG-ID): TS000020.....	359
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000010.....	360
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000020.....	362
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000030.....	365
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000040.....	367
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000050.....	369
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000060.....	370
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000070.....	372
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000080.....	374
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000090.....	377
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000100.....	378
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000110.....	380
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000120.....	382
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000130.....	384
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000140.....	386
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000150.....	387
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000160.....	390
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000170.....	392
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000180.....	394
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000190.....	396
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000200.....	398
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000210.....	399
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000220.....	400
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000230.....	401
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000240.....	402
Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000250.....	403

Rule Version (STIG-ID): US000260.....	404
Rule Version (STIG-ID): UT000010.....	406
Rule Version (STIG-ID): UT000020.....	407
Rule Version (STIG-ID): UT000030.....	409
Rule Version (STIG-ID): UT000040.....	411
Rule Version (STIG-ID): UT000050.....	413
Rule Version (STIG-ID): VT000010.....	415
Rule Version (STIG-ID): VT000020.....	417

Group ID (Vulid): V-97997

Group Title: CE000010

Rule ID: SV-107101r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [CE000010](#)

Rule Title: Certificate Name Filtering must be implemented with appropriate authorization and documentation.

Vulnerability Discussion: Certificate name filtering is a facility that allows multiple certificates to be mapped to a single ACP userid. Rather than matching a certificate stored in the ACP to determine the userid, criteria rules are used. Depending on the filter criteria, a large number of client certificates could be mapped to a single userid. Failure to properly control the use of certificate name filtering could result in the loss of individual identity and accountability.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that certificate name filtering is not used unless the filtering rules have been documented to, and approved by, the IAM.

Currently the RACDCERT command does not support a generic userid value of ID(*) LISTMAP to list all the certificate name filters defined to RACF. However, the following commands can be issued to determine if certificate name filtering may be implemented.

- a) If certificate name filtering is in use, collect documentation describing each active filter rule and written approval from the ISSM to use the rule.
- b) Issue the SETROPTS LIST command. If the DIGTNMAP resource class is active, RACF is ready to process any certificate name filters with a Status of TRUST. The DIGTNMAP resource class should not be active unless certificate name filtering is desired.

If the DIGTNMAP resource class is not active, there is NO FINDING.

- c) Certificate name filters are stored as profiles in the DIGTNMAP resource class. The RLIST command is not intended for use with profiles in the DIGTNMAP resource class. However it can be used to determine if any profiles are defined. (NOTE: The information will not be displayed in a suitable format to easily interpret the filter.)

RLIST DIGTNMAP *

If there is nothing to list in the DIGTNMAP resource class, there is NO FINDING.

If profile information is displayed, one or more certificate name filters are defined to RACF. Under the NAME heading of each profile listing is the userid the filter is being mapped to. Issue the following command the list the certificate name filter associated with each userid:

Using Vanguard Administrators View Digital Mapping Filters option 18;2 with no masking review all Certificate name filters.

NOTE: Certificate name filters are only valid when their Status is TRUST. Therefore, you may ignore filters with the NOTRUST status.

- d) If the DIGTNMAP resource class is active and certificate name filters have a Status of TRUST, certificate name filtering is in use.
- e) If certificate name filtering is in use and filtering rules have been documented and approved by the ISSM, there is NO FINDING.
- f) If certificate name filtering is in use and filtering rules have not been documented and approved by the ISSM, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Ensure any certificate name filtering rules in use are documented and approved by the ISSM.

Group ID (Vulid): V-97999

Group Title: CE000020

Rule ID: SV-107103r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [CE000020](#)

Rule Title: Expired Digital Certificates must not be used.

Vulnerability Discussion: The longer and more often a key is used, the more susceptible it is to loss or discovery. This weakens the assurance provided to a relying Party that the unique binding between a key and its named subscriber is valid. Therefore, it is important that certificates are periodically refreshed. This is in accordance with DoD requirement. Expired Certificate must not be in use.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

NOTE: The procedures in this checklist item presume the domain being reviewed is running all releases of z/OS, and use the ACP as the certificate store.

The IAO will ensure that for production environments, expired certificates are not used.

If the domain being reviewed is not a production system and is only used for test and development, Expired Certificates review can be skipped.

- a) From STIG ID ITCP0060, use the userid(s) assigned to the TCP/IP address space(s) and issue the following RACF command to list the certificate(s) associated with the TCPIP userid(s):

RACDCERT ID(tcpip userid) LIST

- b) If no certificate information is found, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Certificates are only valid when their Status is TRUST. Therefore, you may ignore certificates with the NOTRUST status.

- c) Check the expiration for each certificate with a status of TRUST. If the expiration date has passed this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: If the certificate is a user or device certificate with a status of TRUST, follow procedures to obtain a new certificate or re-key certificate. If it is an expired CA certificate remove it.

Group ID (Vulid): V-98001

Group Title: CE000030

Rule ID: SV-107105r1

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [CE000030](#)

Rule Title: All digital certificates in use must have a valid path to a trusted Certification authority.

Vulnerability Discussion: The origin of a certificate, the Certificate Authority (i.e., CA), is crucial in determining if the certificate should be trusted. An approved CA establishes grounds for confidence at both ends of communications sessions in ongoing identities of other parties and in the validity of information transmitted.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

NOTE: The procedures in this checklist item presume the domain being reviewed is running all releases of z/OS, and use the ACP as the certificate store.

The IAO will ensure that for production environments, the list of Certificate Authorities considered trusted by the Z/OS host are limited to those with a trust hierarchy that leads to a DOD PKI Root Certificate Authority.

If the domain being review is not a production system and is only used for test and development, this Self-Signed Certificates review can be skipped.

- a) From STIG ID ITCP0060, use the userid(s) assigned to the TCP/IP address space(s) and issue the following RACF command to list the certificate(s) associated with the TCPIP userid(s):

RACDCERT ID(tcpip userid) LIST

- b) If no certificate information is found, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Certificates are only valid when their Status is TRUST. Therefore, you may ignore certificates with the NOTRUST status.

- c) If the digital certificate information indicates that the issuer's distinguished name leads to a DoD PKI Root Certification Authority, External Root Certification Authority (ECA), or an approved External Partner PKI s Root Certification Authority, there is NO FINDING.

Examples of an acceptable DoD CA are:

DoD PKI Class 3 Root CA

DoD PKI Med Root CA

Fix Text: Remove or and replace certificates whose the issuer's distinguished name does not lead to a DoD PKI Root Certification Authority, External Root Certification Authority (ECA), or an approved External Partner PKI s Root Certification Authority.

CCI: CCI-002470

Group ID (Vulid): V-98003

Group Title: ES000010

Rule ID: SV-107107r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000010](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to SYS1.NUCLEUS must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: This data set contains a large portion of the system initialization (IPL) programs and pointers to the master and alternate master catalog. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.NUCLEUS

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.

2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.NUCLEUS and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect SYS1.NUCLEUS.

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to SYS1.NUCLEUS is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98005

Group Title: ES000020

Rule ID: SV-107109r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000020](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to libraries that contain PPT modules must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: Specific PPT designated program modules possess significant security bypass capabilities. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

a) Generate batch report JCL, as follows:.

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option B - Sensitive/Critical Data Sets Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Select Link List Table (All libraries) by entering an S next to the prompt6. At the bottom of the screen, select the following options as shown below:

Specify YES or NO to include the following:

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

7. Press ENTER

8. Select QG on the next panel, when the QG edit screen is displayed enter the following beginning in column 2

LD DA('&DSNAME') VOLUME(&DSVOL) ALL

LD DA('&DSNAME') GEN ALL

9. Type ACCEPT at the Command line

10. Press ENTER

11. Select E on the JCL Submit Processing panel, when the generated JCL is displayed modify the following:

```
//VSSQGOUT DD DSN=&&TEMPQG, UNIT=SYSALLDA,
```

```
// DISP=(,PASS),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80),
```

```
// SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))
```

12. Add the following statements after the last generated JCL statement:

```
//STEP02 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01  
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSTSIN DD DSN=&&TEMPQG,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
```

b) Review the report output for all listed libraries,

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule) with ACCESS other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.

c) Review the RACF Dataset List output for all listed libraries and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a FINDING.

d) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

e) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect libraries containing modules listed in the Program Properties Table (PPT).

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to libraries containing PPT modules is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98007

Group Title: ES000030

Rule ID: SV-107111r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000030](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to LINKLIST libraries are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: The primary function of the LINKLIST is to serve as a single repository for commonly used system modules. Failure to ensure that the proper set of libraries are designated for LINKLIST can impact system integrity, performance, and functionality. For this reason, controls must be employed to ensure that the correct set of LINKLIST libraries are used. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

a) Generate batch report JCL, as follows:.

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option B - Sensitive/Critical Data Sets Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Select Link List Table (All libraries) by entering an S next to the prompt
6. At the bottom of the screen, select the following options as shown below:

Specify YES or NO to include the following:

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

7. Press ENTER

8. Select QG on the next panel, when the QG edit screen is displayed enter the following beginning in column 2

LD DA('&DSNAME') VOLUME(&DSVOL) ALL

LD DA('&DSNAME') GEN ALL

9. Type ACCEPT at the Command line

10. Press ENTER

11. Select E on the JCL Submit Processing panel, when the generated JCL is displayed modify the following:

//VSSQGOUT DD DSN=&&TEMPQG, UNIT=SYSALLDA,

// DISP=(,PASS),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80),

// SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))

12. Add the following statements after the last generated JCL statement:

```
//STEP02 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD DSN=&&TEMPQG,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
```

b) Review the report output for all listed libraries,

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule) with ACCESS other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.

c) Review the RACF Dataset List output for all listed libraries and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a FINDING.

d) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

e) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect the LINKLIST libraries.

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to LINKLIST libraries is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98009

Group Title: ES000040

Rule ID: SV-107113r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000040](#)

Rule Title: Emergency USERIDs must be properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: Emergency USERIDs are necessary in the event of a system outage for recovery purposes. It is critical that those USERIDs be defined with the appropriate access to ensure timely restoration of services.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Refer to U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc., Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2), Item 3: Item 3: Copies of all source, vendor integrity statements, or other documentation for all installed system, user, and ACP exits maintained by the site. Also include a list of the libraries in which these modules are contained.

b) To get DASDVOL, GDASDVOL Resource Class and Userid Information, do the following tasks:

1. Go to the Analyzer main menu, select option 4
 2. On the Batch Reports menu select TSO UADS, option U
- Note: Analyzer 8.1 with PTF VS48081 is required for this option to be available.
3. Press ENTER
 4. Set Exceptions only and Sort Criteria fields to NO.
 5. Press ENTER
 6. On the JCL Submit Processing menu, select S to submit the batch report
 7. Press ENTER
 8. Go to the Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports, option 3
 9. On the Security Server Reports menu, select General Resource Profile, option 4.
 - a. On the General Resource reports screen:

- b. Select Access Lists, option 4; and
- c. Tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B to generate a batch job; and
- d. Tab to the Enhanced Masking prompt and enter Y next to it
- e. Press ENTER

Note: You may need to be in extract mode to complete this. Type in extract at the command line, then <ENTER>, then enter the above screen.

- 10. On the Enhanced Masking panel enter the following masking string:
- 11. CLASS = DASDVOL OR CLASS=GDASDVOL
- 12. Press ENTER
- 13. On the Processing Options panel, enter Y by the prompt Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line
- 14. Press ENTER
- 15. On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- 16. Press ENTER
- 17. Return to the Security Server Reports menu, select User Profile, option 1
- 18. Press ENTER
- 19. On the User Reports screen, select User Summary, option 1
- 20. Tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B to generate batch job
- 21. Press ENTER
- 22. On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- 23. Press ENTER
- 24. Ensure the following items are in effect regarding emergency userids:

- a. Use the User Summary report to ensure userids exist to perform operating system functions without any RACF security administration privileges. These userids are defined to RACF with the system-OPERATIONS attribute, and FULL access to all DASD volumes. They must not have the SPECIAL attribute. Also, on the DASDVOL/GDASDVOL Access List report, ensure operating system function userids or any associated group are not in the access list of a resource profile.

NOTE: A user who has the system-OPERATIONS attribute has FULL access authorization to all RACF-protected resources in the DASDVOL/GDASDVOL resource classes. However, if their userid or any associated group (i.e., default or connect) is in the access list of a resource profile, they will only have the access specified in the access list.

- b. Check the User Summary report to ensure userids exist to perform RACF security administration only. These userids are defined to RACF with the system-SPECIAL attribute. They must not have the OPERATIONS attribute.
 - c. On the User Summary report, ensure all emergency userids are defined to RACF. Use the TSO UADS Analysis report to ensure all emergency userids are defined to SYS1.UADS.
- c) If all items (a,b,c) in (24) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (24) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will review the emergency USERIDs to ensure access granted only authorizes those resources required to support the specific functions of either DASD Recovery or System Administration.

Ensure the following items are in effect regarding emergency userids:

At a minimum an emergency userids will exists with the security administration attributes specified in accordance with the following requirements:

- Userids exist to perform RACF security administration only. These userids are defined to RACF with the system-SPECIAL attribute. They must not have the OPERATIONS attribute. Emergency userids will have either SPECIAL or OPERATIONS but not both.
- Userids can be defined to perform operating system functions. Such userids must be defined without any RACF security administration privileges. These userids are defined to RACF with the system-OPERATIONS attribute, FULL access to all DASD volumes resources as well as the FACILITY Class STGADMN profiles. They must not have the SPECIAL attribute.

NOTE: A user who has the system-OPERATIONS attribute has FULL access authorization to all RACFprotected resources in the DASDVOL/GDASDVOL resource classes. However, if their userid or any associated group (i.e., default or connect) is in the access list of a resource profile, they will only have the access specified in the access list since access lists override OPERATIONS.

- Userids exist to perform RACF security administration only. These userids are defined to RACF with the system-SPECIAL attribute. They must not have the OPERATIONS attribute. Emergency userids will have either SPECIAL or OPERATIONS but not both.
- All emergency userids are defined to RACF and SYS1.UADS. See TSO Command Ref for info on adding users to UADS.
- All emergency userids are to be implemented with logging to provide an audit trail of their activities. This is accomplished with the UAUDIT attribute via the command:

ALU <uid> UAUDIT

- All emergency userids will have distinct, different passwords in SYS1.UADS and in RACF, and the site is to establish procedures to ensure that the passwords differ. The password for any ID in SYS1.UADS is never to match the password for the same ID in RACF.
- All emergency userids will have documented procedures - such as a COOP Plan - to provide a mechanism for the use of the IDs. Their release for use is to be logged, and the log is to be maintained by the IAO. When an emergency userids is released for use, its password is to be reset by the IAO within 12 hours.

CCI: CCI-000035

CCI: CCI-001220

Group ID (Vulid): V-98011

Group Title: ES000050

Rule ID: SV-107115r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000050](#)

Rule Title: The SETROPTS LOGOPTIONS must be properly configured

Vulnerability Discussion: Audit records are central to after-the-fact investigations of security incidents. Every effort should be taken to collect as much information as productively feasible for these investigative processes. The SETROPTS LOGOPTIONS option serves as a default auditing requirement. Auditing Failures as a minimum will assure a base level of information is available for investigations.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

- a) In TSO Issue the SETR LIST command
- b) Capture from the Screen all the CLASSES LISTED next to LOGOPTIONS FAILURES CLASSES=
- c) Capture from the Screen all the CLASSES LISTED next to ACTIVE=
- d) If all ACTIVE classes are also listed under the LOGOPTIONS FAILURES CLASSES= classes, there is NO FINDING
- e) If any ACTIVE classes are not listed under the LOGOPTIONS FAILURES CLASSES= classes, this is a FINDING.
- f) LOGOPTIONS "NEVER" CLASSES = NONE is specified, then NO FINDING otherwise FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

CCI: CCI-000172

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98013

Group Title: ES000060

Rule ID: SV-107117r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000060](#)

Rule Title: Memory and privileged program dumps must be protected in accordance with proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: Access to memory and privileged program dumps running Trusted Control Block (TCB) key 0-7 may hold passwords, encryption keys, or other sensitive data that must not be made available. Failure to properly control access to these facilities could result in unauthorized personnel modifying sensitive z/OS lists. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Note: Generic profiles can be used (i.e. IEA*. ** below instead of IEAABD*) for the checks below, as long as all the detailed requirements re access and logging as specified below, are met.

Display profiles for the IEAABD. prefixed resources in the FACILITY resource class as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Profile field and enter IEAABD*
- h) Tab down to the Class field and enter FACILITY
- i) Press ENTER
- j) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line prompt
- k) Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- m) Return to the General Reports screen , select Audit Flags, option 2
- n) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- o) Tab down to the Profile field and enter IEAABD*
- p) Tab down to the Class field and enter FACILITY
- q) Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- s) Review Access List report and Audit Flags report output and ensure that the following items are in effect:
 1. IEAABD.** is defined with a UACC(NONE) and AUDIT(ALL)
 2. IEAABD.DMPAUTH.** is defined with UACC(NONE) and SUCCESS(UPDATE) and FAILURES(UPDATE) or better specified. Only Systems Programmers are allowed UPDATE access. Anyone can have read access.

3. IEAABD.DMPAKEY.** is defined with a UACC(NONE), AUDIT(ALL) and access is limited to Systems Programming Personnel of READ or higher.

t) If any of the above in (s) is untrue for any of the specified IEAABD. resources, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Memory and privileged program dump resources are provided via resources in the FACILITY resource class. Ensure that the following are properly specified in the ACP.

(Note: The resources and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resources and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product's installation guide and can be site specific.)

Below is listed the access requirements for memory and privileged program dump resources. Ensure the guidelines for the resource type, resources, and/or generic equivalent are followed. When protecting the facilities for dumps lists via the FACILITY resource class, ensure that the following items are in effect:

IEAABD.
IEAABD.DMPAUTH.
IEAABD.DMPAKEY.

The RACF resource rules for the resources specify UACC(NONE) and NOWARNING.

Ensure that no access is given to IEAABD. resource.

Example

```
RDEF FACILITY IEAABD.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(owner group) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

IEAABD.DMPAUTH. READ access is limited to authorized users that have a valid job duties requirement for access. UPDATE access will be restricted to system programming personnel and access will be logged.

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY IEAABD.DMPAUTH.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(owner group) AUDIT(ALL(UPDATE))
```

```
PERMIT IEAABD.DMPAUTH.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(authusers) ACCESS(READ)  
PERMIT IEAABD.DMPAUTH.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspauDt) ACCESS(UPDATE)
```

IEAABD.DMPAKEY. access will be restricted to system programming personnel and access will be logged.

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY IEAABD.DMPAKEY.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(owner group) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
PERMIT IEAABD.DMPAKEY.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspauDt) ACCESS(READ)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98015

Group Title: ES000070

Rule ID: SV-107245r2_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000070](#)

Rule Title: z/OS system commands must be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: z/OS system commands provide a method of controlling the operating environment. Failure to properly control access to z/OS system commands could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive system commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
N/A

Check Content:

Display System Commands Controls in the OPERCMDS class as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Profile field and enter MVS*
- h) Tab down to the Class field and enter OPERCMDS
- i) Press ENTER
- j) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line prompt
- k) Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- m) Return to the General Reports screen, select Audit Flags, option 2
- n) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- o) Tab down to the Profile field and enter MVS*
- p) Tab down to the Class field and enter OPERCMDS
- q) Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- s) Review Access List report and Audit Flags report output and ensure that the following items are in effect:
 1. On the Access List report, if the MVS.** resource is defined to the OPERCMDS class with a default access of NONE, there is NO FINDING.
On the Audit Flags report, if all failures and successes access to the MVS.** resource are logged, there is NO FINDING.
 2. On the Access List report, if access to Z/OS system commands defined in the table entitled Required Controls on Z/OS System Commands in the Z/OS STIG Addendum is restricted to the appropriate personnel

(e.g., operations staff, systems programming personnel, general users), there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Use the GROUP category specified in the table referenced above as a guideline to determine appropriate personnel access to system commands.

NOTE: The (MVS.SEND) Command will not be a finding if used by all.

3. On the Audit Flag report, if all access (i.e., failures and successes) to specific Z/OS system commands is logged as indicated in the table entitled Controls on z/OS System Commands in the z/OS stig Addendum there is NO FINDING.

t) If any of the above in (s) is untrue for any Z/OS system command resource, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: z/OS system commands provide control over z/OS functions and can compromise security if misused. These commands are subject to various types of potential abuse. For this reason, it is necessary to place restrictions on the z/OS system commands that can be entered by particular operators.

Some commands are particularly dangerous and should only be used when all less drastic options have been exhausted. Misuse of these commands can create a situation in which the only recovery is an IPL.

Apply the following recommendations when implementing security:

The MVS.** resource is defined to the OPERCMDS class with an access of NONE and all (i.e., failures and successes) access logged.

Access to z/OS system commands defined in the "Required Controls on z/OS System Commands" table in the zOS STIG Addendum is restricted to the appropriate personnel (e.g., operations staff, systems programming personnel, general users).

NOTE: Use the GROUP category specified in the table referenced above as a guideline to determine appropriate personnel access to system commands.

NOTE: The (MVS.SEND) Command will not be a finding if used by all.

All access (i.e., failures and successes) to specific z/OS system commands is logged as indicated in the table entitled "Required Controls on z/OS System Commands" in the zOS STIG Addendum.

A sample set of commands to define and permit access to system command resources is shown here:

```
RDEF OPERCMDS MVS.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(<syspau>) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) DATA("set up
deny-
by-default profile per srr pdi acp00282')
```

Then, in accordance with the referenced table, use the following template to define profiles for each command:

```
RDEF OPERCMDS <systemcommandprofile> UACC(NONE) OWNER(<syspau>) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
PERMIT <systemcommandprofile> CLASS(OPERCMDS) ID(<groupname>) ACCESS(<accesslevel>)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98017

Group Title: ES000080

Rule ID: SV-107121r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000080](#)

Rule Title: Users that have access to the CONSOLE resource in the TSOAUTH resource class are not properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: MCS consoles can be used to issue operator commands. Failure to properly control access to MCS consoles could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive operator commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Display User CONSOLE and System Commands privilege information, as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Profile field and enter CONSOLE
- h) Tab down to the Class field and enter TSOAUTH
- i) Press ENTER
- j) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line prompt k) Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- m) Press ENTER
- n) Return to the Security Server Reports menu, select Profile reports, option 5o) Press ENTER
- p) On the Profile Reports menu, select OPERPARM, option 5 under User Segments.
- q) Press ENTER
- r) On the USER OPERPARM SEGMENT REPORT screen, tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B for batch processing s) Press ENTER
- t) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- u) Press ENTER
- v) Review Access List report for TSOAUTH class, User OPERPARM Segment report and Access List report for MVS* profiles in the OPERCMDS class generated in ACP00282, ensure the following are in effect:
 1. On the class TSOAUTH Access List report, if the CONSOLE privilege is not defined to the TSOAUTH resource class, there is NO FINDING.

2. At the discretion of the IAO, users may be allowed to issues Z/OS system commands from a TSO session. With this in mind, ensure the following items are in effect for users granted the CONSOLE resource in the TSOAUTH resource class:

a. On the User OPERPARM Segment report, ensure userids are restricted to the INFO level on the AUTH parameter specified in the OPERPARM segment of their userid, under the Console Authority field header.

b. On the OPERCMDS class Access List generated in ACP00282, ensure userids are restricted to READ access to the MVS.MCSOPER.userid resource defined in the OPERCMDS resource class.

c. On the class TSOAUTH Access List generated above, ensure userids and/or group IDs are restricted to READ access to the CONSOLE resource defined in the TSOAUTH resource class.

If all of the above in (2) are true, there is NO FINDING.

If any of the above in (2) are untrue, this is a FINDING.

w) If all of the above in (v) are true, there is NO FINDING

x) If any of the above in (v) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of correcting any deficiencies. Develop a plan of action and implement the required changes.

Ensure the following items are in effect for all MCS consoles:

1. Define a profile protecting the use of the CONSOLE command within TSO. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here: RDEF TSOAUTH CONSOLE UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

2. Permit only authorized users. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here: PE CONSOLE CL(TSOAUTH) ID(<syspautd>)

3. Set up the OPERPARM segment in corresponding user-class entry. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here: ALU <authorizeduser> OPERPARM(AUTH(INFO))

4. Userids are restricted to READ access to the MVS.MCSOPER.userid resource defined in the OPERCMDS resource class. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here using the GLOBAL class:

RDEF GLOBAL OPERCMDS ADDMEM(MVS.MCSOPER.&RACUID/READ) OWNER(ADMIN)

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98019

Group Title: ES000090

Rule ID: SV-107123r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000090](#)

Rule Title: FACILITY resource class is inactive.

Vulnerability Discussion: IBM Provides the FACILITY Class for use in protecting a variety of features/functions/products both IBM and third party. The FACILITY Class is not dedicated to any one specific use and is intended as a multi-purpose RACF Class. Failure to activate this class will result in unprotected resources. This exposure may threaten the integrity of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Z/OS UNIX Telnet Server component is configured according to the settings in the following table:

z/OS UNIX TELNET SERVER HFS OBJECT SECURITY SETTINGS

DIRECTORY or FILE	PERMISSION BITS	USER
-------------------	-----------------	------

AUDIT BITS		
/usr/sbin/otelnetsd	1740	fff
/etc/banner	0744	faf

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14 open files browse files above and review Permission bits and USER Audit bits.

b) If the HFS permission bits and user audit bits for each directory and file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in the table above, there is
NO FINDING.

NOTE: The /usr/sbin/otelnetsd object is a symbolic link to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/otelnetsd. The permission and user audit bits on the target of the symbolic link must have the required settings.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive: 7 rwx(least restrictive)

6 rw3
-wx
2 w
5 r-x
4 r-1
--x

0 --- (most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a log

for failed and successful access

-no auditing

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that the FACILITY resource class is active.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

(1) The FACILITY Class is activated with the command SETR CLASSACT(FACILITY).

(2) Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(FACILITY) GENCMD(FACILITY).

(3) IBM recommends RACLISTing the FACILITY Class which is accomplished with the command SETR RACL(FACILITY).

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98021

Group Title: ES000100

Rule ID: SV-107125r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000100](#)

Rule Title: The OPERCMDS resource class is not active.

Vulnerability Discussion: z/OS system commands provide a method of controlling the operating environment. Failure to properly control access to z/OS system commands could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive system commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the SETROPTS screen, locate the CDT Classes prompt, enter E next to it. f) Press ENTER
- g) Invoke the locate command, Locate OPERCMDS
- h) Screen print the display showing the attributes of the OPERCMDS class, including active status
 1. If the OPERCMDS class is ACTIVE there is NOFINDING
 2. If the OPERCMDS class is not ACTIVE there is a FINDING
- i) If Item 1 is true then there is NOFINDING
- j) If Item 2 is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that the OPERCMDS class is active.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

(1) The OPERCMDS Class is activated with the command SETR CLASSACT(OPERCMDS).

(2) Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(OPERCMDS)

GENCMD(OPERCMDs).

(3) IBM recommends RACLISTing the OPERCMDS Class which is accomplished with the command SETR
RACL(OPERCMDs).

Refer to ACP00282 for information on content of the OPERCMDS class.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98023

Group Title: ES000110

Rule ID: SV-107127r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000110](#)

Rule Title: MCS consoles are not active.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0248: CAT II) MCS consoles can be used to issue operator commands. Failure to properly control access to MCS consoles could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive operator commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the SETROPTS screen, locate the CDT Classes prompt, enter E next to it. f) Press ENTER
- g) Invoke the locate command, Locate OPERCMDS
- h) Screen print the display showing the attributes of the OPERCMDS class, including active status
 1. If the OPERCMDS class is ACTIVE there is NOFINDING
 2. If the OPERCMDS class is not ACTIVE there is a FINDING
- i) If Item 1 is true then there is NOFINDING
- j) If Item 2 is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that CONSOLE resource class is active.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

(1) The CONSOLE Class is activated with the command SETR CLASSACT(CONSOLE).

(2) Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(CONSOLE)

GENCMD(CONSOLE).

(3) IBM recommends RACLISTing the CONSOLE Class which is accomplished with the command SETR
RACL(CONSOLE).

Refer to ACP00292, ACP00293, ACP00294 for information on content of the CONSOLE class.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98025

Group Title: ES000120

Rule ID: SV-107129r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000120](#)

Rule Title: The CLASSACT SETROPTS must be specified for the TEMPDSN Class.

Vulnerability Discussion: CLASSACT specifies those classes defined by entries in the class descriptor table for which RACF checking is to be ACTIVE. DATASET, USER, and GROUP are active by default and cannot be activated or deactivated.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the Access Control Program (ACP) will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the systemwide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) In ISPF option #6, run SETR LIST
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Continue to press ENTER until the ACTIVE CLASSES heading appear, screen print the area where the TEMPDSN classes is present.
 1. If the class listed is active (i.e. in the ACTIVE CLASS list) , there is NOFINDING
 2. If any one of these classes listed are not active (i.e. Not in the ACTIVE CLASS list), this is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that SETROPTS CLASSACT has been specified, at minimum, for the TEMPDSN resource class.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

IBM recommends activating the classes important to your installation. At minimum the command:

SETR CLASSACT(TEMPDSN)

It is not recommended to perform a SETR CLASSACT(*).

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002262

Group ID (Vulid): V-98027

Group Title: ES000130

Rule ID: SV-107131r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000130](#)

Rule Title: There are started tasks defined to RACF with the trusted attribute that are not justified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Trusted Started tasks bypass RACF checking. It is vital that this attribute is NOT granted to unauthorized Started Tasks which could then obtain unauthorized access to the system. This could result in the compromise of the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of the operating system, ACP, or customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display STARTED class information as follows:

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 3 - Online Displays
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option 4 - Started Procedures Analysis
4. Press ENTER

b) Review Started Procedures Analysis searching for STC definitions for the following:

1. Review Started Procedures Analysis searching for STCs which show a Yes under the PRI field heading. Use SORT PRI to sort any with a Y to the bottom.
 - a. If any STC has a Y in the PRI column, there is a finding.
 2. Next, Review the Started Procedures for any STC definitions with Y in the TRU field (TRUSTED). Use SORT TRU on the command line to sort all the trusted STC s to the bottom.
 - a. Validate that only STCs in the list below have the TRUSTED attribute (ie, have a Y in the TRU column)
 - b. If additional STCs have the TRUSTED flag enabled, and documentation exists from DISA Field Security Operations approving the additional STCs, there is NO FINDING.
 3. Ensure that an entry ** exists and has no access or resources granted to it including a UACC of NONE.
 - a. To accomplish this go into ADMINISTRATOR, Option #4, Online Access and Authorization, fill in these fields with the specified values and hit enter:
 1. CLASS .. : STARTED
 2. Resource Name (without quotes) . . **
 3. Access to check NONE
 - b. If the display field near the top left indicates that No Profile exists (see b.1 below for an example) this is a finding as the ** profile must exist.

1. Profile: **No Profile exists**
- c. On the screen that displays, CHECK that the UACC is NONE and that the ACCESS LIST that is displayed is NULL.
- d. If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING..
- c) If All Started Procedures conform with 1.a, 2.a & 2.b, 3.b & 3.c, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any Started Procedure does not conform with 1.a, 2.a & 2.b, 3.b & 3.c., there is a FINDING.

TRUSTED STARTED TASKS

ACF2
ACFBKUP
APSWPROA
APSWPROB
APSWPROC
APSWPROM
APSWPROT
CATALOG
CONSOLE
DFHSM*
DFS
DUMPSRV
GPMSEERVE
GSKSRVR
IEEVMPCR
IOSAS
IXGLOGR
JES2
JESXCF
LLA
NFS
OMVS/OMVSKERN***
RACF
RMF
RMFGAT
SMF
SMSRESTN
SMSRESTR
SMSVSAM
TCPIP
TSS
TSSB
TSSBKUP
TSSRESTN
VLF
VTAM
XCFAS
ZFS**

Fix Text: Review assignment of the TRUSTED attribute in ICHRIN03 and/or the STARTED resource class. If a started proc defined with the TRUSTED attribute exists that is not in the approved list of trusted started tasks as found in the TRUSTED STARTED TASKS Table in the zOS STIG Addendum then the TRUSTED attribute should be removed.

The TRUSTED attribute can be removed from a STARTED class profile using the command:
RALT STARTED <profilename> STDATA(TRUSTED(NO))

If the STARTED class is RACLISTed then a refresh command is necessary:
SETR RACL(STARTED) REFRESH

If any Started Tasks exist with the PRIVILEGED attribute then take the following action to remove this attribute:

RALT STARTED <profilename> STDATA(PRIVILEGED(NO))

If the STARTED class is RACLISTed then a refresh command is necessary:
SETR RACL(STARTED) REFRESH

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98029

Group Title: ES000140

Rule ID: SV-107133r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000140](#)

Rule Title: The number of USERIDs possessing the Tape Bypass Label Processing (BLP) privilege is not justified.

Vulnerability Discussion: BLP is extremely sensitive, as it allows the circumvention of security access checking for the data. When BLP is used in z/OS, the only verification that is done is for the data set name in the JCL. Any data set name can be used. A user could specify a data set name that he has access to, the job would pass the validation check, and the job would be processed, giving access to the data. BLP is typically used for tapes that are external to the tape management system used on the processor.

BLP should be granted to only a limited number of people, preferably the tape librarian and a few key people from the operations staff. If an unauthorized user possesses BLP authority, they could potentially read any restricted tape and modify any information once it has been copied.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display FACILITY class Bypass Label Processing (BLP) Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List , option 4,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter ICHBLP by the Profile field and FACILITY by the Class field h) Press ENTER
- i) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- j) Press ENTER
- k) If no tape management system (e.g. CA 1) is installed, return to Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands, option 2, select SETROPTS option 5, locate the CDT Edit prompt on the right hand side of the screen and enter E, Press ENTER, on the next screen enter L TAPEVOL at the command prompt, when the TAPEVOL information is displayed capture the screen.
- l) Review General Resource Access List report output and ensure the following items are in effect regarding bypass label processing (BLP):
 1. The ICHBLP resource is defined to the FACILITY resource class with a UACC(NONE)
 2. Access authorization to the ICHBLP resource is restricted at the userid level to data center personnel (e.g. tape librarian, operations staff, etc.)
 3. The number of userids authorized to the ICHBLP resource is not excessive.

4. If not tape management system (e.g., CA 1) is installed, the TAPEVOL class is active (as shown on item (v) CDT screen capture)

m) If all items in (w) are true there is NOFINDING

n) If any item in (w) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Review all USERIDs with the BLP attribute. Ensure documentation providing justification for access is maintained and filed with the IAO, and that unjustified access is removed.

BLP is controlled thru the FACILITY class profile ICHBLP. Access is removed with the following command:

PE ICHBLP CL(FACILITY) id(<userid>) DELETE

a subsequent REFRESH of the FACILITY class may be required via the command: SETR RACL(FACILITY) REFRESH

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98031

Group Title: ES000150

Rule ID: SV-107135r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000150](#)

Rule Title: DASD Volume level protection does not exist or is improperly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: Volume access grants default access to all data sets residing on a given volume. This presents an exposure in the case of a data set improperly placed on a volume or inappropriate access being granted to a volume.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following items In U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc., Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2):

- * Item 1
- * Item 13

Display DASDVOL Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List , option 4,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Enhanced Masking prompt and enter Y
- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the Enhanced Masking edit panel, enter the following masking criteria:
CLASS=DASDVOL or CLASS=GDASDVOL
- j) Press ENTER
- k) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- l) Press ENTER
- m) Review General Resource Access List report output and ensure the following items are in effect regarding DASD volume controls:
 1. A profile of * is defined to the DASDVOL resource class.
 2. Access authorization to DASDVOL profiles is restricted to Storage Management Personnel, Storage Management Batch Userids, and Systems Programmers
 3. All profiles defined to the DASDVOL resource class have UACC(NONE).

NOTE: Volume authorization allows access to all data sets on the volume, regardless of data set profile authorization. Access to operating

system and general user storage volumes should be questioned. Refer to Section 3.3.2.5, Special Storage Management Users, and Section 3.3.2.6, Emergency Userids, in the Z/OS STIG for allowable usage of the DASDVOL/GDASDVOL resource classes.

n) If all items in (m) are true there is NOFINDING

o) If any item in (m) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Develop a plan of action to implement the required changed.

1. Define profiles in the DASDVOL class. A sample command is provided here: RDEF DASDVOL ** UACC(NONE) OWNER(<StgMgmtGrp>) AUDIT(ALL(READ)).

2. More specific DASDVOL profiles should be defined to protect groups of DASDVOLs. A sample command to create a profile protecting all DASDVOLs beginning with "SYS" is provided here: RDEF DASDVOL SYS* UACC(NONE) OWNER(<StgMgmtGrp>) AUDIT(ALL(READ)).

3. Permission can be granted to DASDVOL profiles. A sample command is provided here: PE SYS* CLASS(DASDVOL) ID(<syspaut>) ACCESS(ALTER)

4. If any profiles are in WARN Mode, they should be reset. A sample command is provided here: RALT DASDVOL <profilenameNOWARN.

5. Note that the GDASDVOL class can also be used. See the RACF Security Admin Guide for more info.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98033

Group Title: ES000160

Rule ID: SV-107137r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000160](#)

Rule Title: Sensitive Utility Controls will be properly defined and protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: Sensitive Utility Controls can run sensitive system privileges or controls, and potentially can circumvent system and security controls. Failure to properly control access to these resources could result in the compromise of the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of the operating system environment, system services, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) In the Vanguard Administrator go to Option 3;4 which is Security Server Reports; General Resource Profile and then make sure you are in LIVE MODE (type LIVE at the command line). choose O for ONLINE. In the Standard Masking Fields for CLASS: type in PROGRAM and hit ENTER. On the command line for each profile listed below type LR in the CMD line next to the PROGRAM and PROFILE being checked:

b) If you Installation DOES NOT use MQSeries, this STEP B can be skipped. 1. Find the following classes in the output and validate that access is restricted per the Auth column in the Sensitive Utility Table in the Stig Addendum..

CSQUTIL
CSQUCVX
CSQJU003
CSQJU004
CSQ1LOGP

2. All Access is audited, e.g. ALL(READ)

a. If access is granted only as specified in the the Sensitive Utility Table and audit is set to ALL(READ) then there is NO FINDING.

b. If access is granted to anyone not specified in the Sensitive Utility Table and audit is not set to ALL(READ) then there is A FINDING.

c) Referring to the Sensitive Utility Table in the STIG Addendum, ensure that all applicable programs or their generic equivalents specified in the table meet the following requirements (e.g. ***GTF**, ***IOCP, *MASPZAP): Type LR next to each and ensure the following:

1. Profile is defined in the PROGRAM resource class.

2. Access is restricted to the appropriate personnel (e.g., systems programming, storage management, etc.) per the Auth column in the Sensitive Utility Table in the Stig Addendum.

3. All access is audited, e.g., ALL(READ).

a. If all programs are defined, audited and with appropriate access, then there is NO FINDING

- b. If any program is not defined, not audited or with inappropriate access, then there IS A FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will work with the systems programmer to verify that the following are properly specified in the ACP.

(Note: The resources, and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product s installation guide and can be site specific.)

Ensure that all Sensitive Utility Controls resources and/or generic equivalent are properly protected according to the requirements specified in Sensitive Utility Controls table in the z/OS STIG Addendum.

Use Sensitive Utility Controls table in the z/OS STIG Addendum. This table lists the resources, access requirements, and logging requirements for Sensitive Utilities, ensures the following guidelines are followed:

The RACF resources as designated in the above table are defined with a default access of NONE.

The RACF resource access authorizations restrict access to the appropriate personnel as designated in the above table.

The RACF resource rules for the resources designated in the above table specify UACC(NONE) and NOWARNING.

The following commands are provided as a sample for implementing resource controls:

```
RDEF PROGRAM AHLGTF ADDMEM('SYS1.LINKLIB'//NOPADCHK) -  
DATA('ADDED PER SRR PDI RACF0770 ') -  
AUDIT(ALL(READ)) UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN)  
PERMIT AHLGTF CLASS(PROGRAM) ID(stcgaudt)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98035

Group Title: ES000170

Rule ID: SV-107139r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000170](#)

Rule Title: RACF Global Access Checking must be restricted to appropriate classes and resources

Vulnerability Discussion: RACF Global access checking can be used to improve the performance of RACF authorization checking for selected resources. The global access checking table is maintained in storage and is checked early in the RACF authorization checking sequence. If an entry in the global access checking table allows the requested access to a resource, RACF performs no further authorization checking. This can elimi

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

From a command input screen enter:
RL Global *

Alternately this can be viewed by following steps:

Refer to the following reports produced by the RACF Data Collection:

- DSMON.RPT(RACGAC)

Examine the Global Access Checking entries.

If Global * is specified in SETROPTS this is a finding.

The following entries may be allowed with the approval of the ISSM:

Dataset Class - ALTER access level to &RACUID.** (Allows users all access to their own datasets)

OPERCMDS Class READ access to MVS.MCSOPER.&RACUID (Allows users access to console for their jobs)

JESJOBS Class ALTER access to CANCEL.*.*&RACUID (Allows users to cancel their own jobs)

JESJOBS Class ALTER access to SUBMIT.*.*&RACUID (Allows users to submit their own jobs)

The ISSM may allow other classes to be included after evaluation with the system programmer.

If any other members are included for Global Access Checking this is a finding.

If written approval by the ISSM is not provided this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Ensure that Global Access Checking is appropriately administered.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop approval; documentation and a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

RALT GLOBAL class-name

ADDMEM (resourcename)/accesslevel)

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98037

Group Title: ES000180

Rule ID: SV-107141r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000180](#)

Rule Title: Access greater than Read to the System Master Catalog must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: System catalogs are the basis for locating all files on the system. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: Master Catalog Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for Master Catalog Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect the MASTER CATALOG.

The IAO will ensure that greater than READ access to MASTER CATALOG is limited to system programmers only and all greater than READ access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98039 Group

Title: ES000190

Rule ID: SV-122r3_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000190](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to SYS1.UADS must be limited to system programmers only and read and update access must be limited to system programmer personnel and/or security personnel.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.UADS is the data set where emergency USERIDs are maintained. This ensures that logon processing can occur even if the ACP is not functional. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.UADS 1.
Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE or lower access is restricted to Systems Programming Personnel and/or Security Personnel. Verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE or lower access is restricted to Systems Programming Personnel and/or Security Personnel. Verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.UADS and check Audit Flag settings
1. If ALL failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: SYS1.UADS allocate/alter authority is limited to the systems programming staff. Read and update access should be limited to the security staff. Evaluate the impact of correcting any deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect SYS1.UADS.

The IAO will ensure that allocate access to SYS1.UADS is limited to system programmers only, read and update access to SYS1.UADS is limited to system programmer personnel and/or security personnel and all dataset access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98041

Group Title: ES000200

Rule ID: SV-107145r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000200](#)

Rule Title: Dynamic lists must be protected in accordance with proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: Dynamic lists provide a method of making z/OS system changes without interrupting the availability of the operating system. Failure to properly control access to these facilities could result in unauthorized personnel modifying sensitive z/OS lists. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Display profiles for the CSV-prefixed resources in the FACILITY resource class as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Profile field and enter CSV*
- h) Tab down to the Class field and enter FACILITY
- i) Press ENTER
- j) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line promptk) Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- m) Return to the General Reports screen , select Audit Flags, option 2
- n) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- o) Tab down to the Profile field and enter CSV*
- p) Tab down to the Class field and enter FACILITY
- q) Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- s) Review Access List report and Audit Flags report output and ensure that the following items are in effect:

1. On the Access List report, if the following resources are defined with a UACC (NONE), there is NO FINDING. On the Audit Flags report, if the following resources are defined with AUDIT(ALL), there is NO FINDING.

CSVAPF.**

CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.DYNAMIC

CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.STATIC

CSVLYLPA.**

CSVLYLPA.ADD.**

CSV DY LPA.DELETE.**
 CSV DY NEX.**
 CSV DY NEX.LIST
 CSV DY NL.**
 CSV DY NL.UPDATE.LNKLST
 CSV LLA (include CSV LLA only if CICS is installed on your system).

2. On the Access List report, if access to all CSV-prefixed resources is restricted to only systems personnel, there is NO FINDING. In addition:

- Access to resource CSV LLA can include CICS userids and Control-O userids (if Control-O is installed on your system) in addition to systems programmers and there is NO FINDING
- READ access to resource CSV DY NEX.LIST is permitted to auditor userids and there is NO FINDING
- If any software product requires access to dynamic LPA updates on the system, the RACF access to the CSV DY LPA resource and/or generic equivalent will be defined with LOG and SERVICE(UPDATE) only after the product has been validated with the appropriate STIG or SRG for compliance AND receives documented and filed authorization that details the need and any accepted risks from the site ISSM or equivalent security authority.
- If the products CA 1 and/or CA Common Services are on the system, the RACF access to the CSV DY LPA.DELETE resource and/or generic equivalent will be defined with AUDIT(ALL) and UPDATE access restricted to CA 1 and CA Common Services STC userids.

Note: In the above, UPDATE access can be substituted with ALTER or CONTROL. Review the permissions in the IBM documentation when specifying UPDATE

3. On the Audit Flags report, if all access to all CSV-prefixed resources is logged, there is NO FINDING.

t) If any of the above in (s) is untrue for any CSV-prefixed resource, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Ensure that the Dynamic List resources are defined to the FACILITY resource class and protected. Only system programmers and a limited number of authorized users and Approved authorized Started Tasks are able to issue these commands. All access is logged.

The required CSV-prefixed Facility Class resources are listed below. These resources or generic equivalents should be defined and permitted as required with only z/OS systems programmers and logging enabled. Minimum required list of CSV-prefixed resources:

CSV APF.**
 CSV APF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.DYNAMIC
 CSV APF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.STATIC
 CSV DY LPA.**
 CSV DY LPA.ADD.**
 CSV DY LPA.DELETE.**
 CSV DY NEX.**
 CSV DY NEX.LIST
 CSV DY NL.**
 CSV DY NL.UPDATE.LNKLST
 CSV LLA.**

Limit authority to those resources to z/OS systems programmers. Restrict to the absolute minimum number of personnel with AUDIT(ALL(READ)) and UPDATE access.

Sample commands are shown here to accomplish this:

```
RDEF FACILITY CSVAPF.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
RDEF FACILITY CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.DYNAMIC.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd)
AUDIT(ALL(READ))
RDEF FACILITY CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.FORMAT.STATIC.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd)
AUDIT (ALL(READ))
```

```
PERMIT CSVAPF.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.SETPROG.FORMAT.DYNAMIC.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd)
ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVAPF.MVS.SETPROG.SETPROG.FORMAT.STATIC.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd)
ACCESS(UPDATE)
```

The CSVDYLPA.ADD resource will be permitted to products BMC Mainview, CA 1, and CA Common Services STC userids with AUDIT(ALL(READ)) and UPDATE access.

The CSVDYLPA.DELETE resource will be permitted to products CA 1 and CA Common Services STC userids with AUDIT(ALL(READ)) and UPDATE access.

Sample commands are shown here to accomplish one set of resources:

```
RDEF FACILITY CSVDYLPA.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
RDEF FACILITY CSVDYLPA.ADD.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
RDEF FACILITY CSVDYLPA.DELETE.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

PERMIT CSVDYLPA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(BMC Mainview STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CA 1 STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CCS STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.ADD.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.ADD.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(BMC Mainview STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.ADD.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CA 1 STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.ADD.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CCS STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.DELETE.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.DELETE.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CA 1 STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVDYLPA.DELETE.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CCS STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
```

The CSVDYNEX.LIST resource and/or generic equivalent will be defined with AUDIT(FAILURE(READ) SUCCESS(UPDATE)) and UPDATE access restricted to system programming personnel.

The CSVDYNEX.LIST resource and/or generic equivalent will be defined with READ access restricted to auditors.

Sample commands are shown here to accomplish this:

```
RDEF FACILITY CSVDYNEX.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd)
AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
RDEF FACILITY CSVODYNEX.LIST.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd)
AUDIT(FAILURE(READ)SUCCESS(UPDATE))
```

```
PERMIT CSVODYNEX.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVODYNEX.LIST.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVODYNEX.LIST.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(audtautd) ACCESS(READ)
```

The CSVLLA resource will be permitted to CICS and CONTROL-O STC userids with AUDIT(ALL(READ)) and UPDATE access.

Sample commands are shown here to accomplish one set of resources:

```
RDEF FACILITY CSVLLA.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspautd) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
PERMIT CSVLLA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(syspautd) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVLLA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CICS STC userids) ACCESS(UPDATE)
PERMIT CSVLLA.** CLASS(FACILITY) ID(CONTROL-O STC userid) ACCESS(UPDATE)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98043

Group Title: ES000210

Rule ID: SV-107147r2_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000210](#)

Rule Title: Allocate access to system user catalogs are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: System catalogs are the basis for locating all files on the system. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis.doc

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: User Catalog Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for User Catalog Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect USER CATALOGS.

The IAO will ensure that allocate access to USER CATALOGS are limited to system programmers only and all allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98045

Group Title: ES000220

Rule ID: SV-107147r2_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000220](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to System backup files are not limited to system programmers and/or batch jobs that perform DASD backups.

Vulnerability Discussion: System backup data sets are necessary for recovery of DASD resident data sets.

Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

CODB-1, DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: DASD Backup File Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel and/or batch jobs that perform DASD backups, otherwise this is a finding.

b) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

c) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Obtain the high level indexes to backup datasets names and verify that their access is restricted by the System's ACP to System Programmers and batch jobs that perform the backups. If any other userids are specified, make sure that the IAO has documented justification for the access.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98047

Group Title: ES000230

Rule ID: SV-107151r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000230](#)

Rule Title: Access to SYS(x).TRACE is not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.TRACE is used to trace and debug system problems. Unauthorized access could result in a compromise of the integrity and availability of all system data and processes.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.TRACE
 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify that READ or higher access has only been granted to system programming personnel and started tasks that perform GTF processing., otherwise this is a finding.
 4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify that READ or higher access has only been granted to system programming personnel and started tasks that perform GTF processing., otherwise this is a finding.
- b) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- c) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that access to SYS1.TRACE is limited to system programmers only.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98049

Group Title: ES000240

Rule ID: SV-107153r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000240](#)

Rule Title: RACF batch jobs are improperly secured.

Vulnerability Discussion: Batch jobs that are submitted to the operating system should inherit the USERID of the submitter. This will identify the batch job with a userid for the purpose of accessing resources. BATCHALLRACF ensures that a valid USERID is associated with batch jobs. Jobs that are submitted to the operating system via a scheduling facility must also be identified to the system. Without a batch job having an associated USERID, access to system resources will be limited.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following item found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2):

* Item 11

-

Display SURROGAT resource class information, as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Class field and enter SURROGAT
- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line prompt j) Press ENTER
- k) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- l) Press ENTER
- m) If the submission of batch jobs via an automated process (e.g. job scheduler, job submission started task, etc.) is being utilized, ensure the following items are in effect:

1. The SURROGAT resource class is active. Note: This does not need to be checked, automation check is performed in ZUSSR060.

2. On the SURROGAT class Access List report, ensure each batch job userid used for batch submission by a job scheduler (e.g., CONTROL-M, CA-7, CA-Scheduler, etc.) is defined as an execution-userid in a SURROGAT RESOURCE CLASS profile. For example:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT execution-userid.SUBMIT
UACC(NONE) OWNER(execution-userid)
```

3. On the SURROGAT class Access List report, ensure each job scheduler

userid (i.e. surrogate-userid) is permitted surrogate activity to the appropriate SURROGAT profiles. For example:

```
PERMIT execution-userid.SUBMIT CLASS(SURROGAT)
ID(surrogate-userid) ACCESS(READ)
```

n) If all of the above in (m) are true, there is NO FINDING

o) If any of the above in (m) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Ensure the following:

1. Each batch job userid used for batch submission by a job scheduler (e.g., CONTROL-M, CA-7, CA-Scheduler, etc.) is defined as an execution-userid in a SURROGAT resource class profile. For example:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT execution-userid.SUBMIT UACC(NONE)
OWNER(execution-userid)
```

2. Job scheduler userids (i.e., surrogate-userid) are permitted surrogate authority to the appropriate SURROGAT profiles. For example:

```
PERMIT execution-userid.SUBMIT CLASS(SURROGAT)
ID(surrogate-userid) ACCESS(READ)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98051

Group Title: ES000250

Rule ID: SV-107155r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000250](#)

Rule Title: RACF batch jobs are not protected with propagation control.

Vulnerability Discussion: Batch jobs that are user-submitted to the operating system should inherit the USERID of the submitter. This will identify the batch job with the user for the purpose of accessing resources. In some environments, such as CICS, jobs submitted without the USER operand specified on the JOB statement run under a user ID other than the user submitting the job, in this case, the CICS userid. This situation presents a security violation in that the issuer of the job will inherit the authority of the CICS userid.

The PROPCNTL Class was designed to prevent this from occurring. Utilize propagation control (PROPCNTL) for system-level address spaces that submit jobs on behalf of users.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following items found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2):

* Item 9: List of all Multiple User Access Systems in use on this system. These are systems that run in a single address space, but allow multiple users to sign on to them (e.g., CICS regions, Session Managers, etc.). For each region, also include corresponding userids, profiles, data management files, and a brief description (of each region).

* Item 11: Documentation of the process used for submission of batch jobs via an automated process (i.e., scheduler or other sources) and each of the associated userids.

Display PROPCNTL Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select SETROPTS (option 5),
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the SETROPTS screen, locate the CDT Classes prompt, enter E next to it.f) Press ENTER
- g) At the command prompt, invoke the locate command for PROPCNTL, type L
PROPCNTL
- h) Screen print the display showing the attributes of the PROPCNTL class, including active status
- i) Return to the Administrator main menu and select Security Server Reports, option 3
- j) On the Security Server Reports menu, select General Resource Profile, option 4.
- k) On the General Resource reports screen, select General Resource Profile Summary, option 1
- l) Enter Extract on the COMMAND line, Press ENTER

- m) Tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B to generate a batch job
- n) Tab down to the Class field and enter PROPCNTL
- o) Press ENTER
- p) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- q) Press ENTER
- r) If (1) the submission of batch jobs via an automated process (e.g. job scheduler, job submission started task, etc.) is being utilized, and/or (2) Multiple User Single Address Space Systems (MUSASS) capable of submitting batch jobs are active on this system, ensure the following items are in effect:
 - 1. The PROPCNTL resource class is active, as displayed on the Security Server Commands CDT screen print.
 - 2. On the class PROPCNTL General Resource Profile Summary report, ensure a PROPCNTL resource class profile is defined for each userid associated with a job scheduler (e.g. CONTROL-M, CA-7, etc.) and a MUSASS able to submit batch jobs (e.g., CA-ROSCOE, etc.)
- s) If both of the above in (r) are true, there is NOFINDING
- t) If either of the above in (r) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Add a PROPCNTL profile for each userid associated with a job scheduler (e.g., CONTROL-M, CA-7, etc.) or a MUSASS able to submit batch jobs (e.g., CA-ROSCOE, etc.).

A sample command is shown here:

```
RDEF PROPCNTL controlm UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98053

Group Title: ES000260

Rule ID: SV-107157r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000260](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to SYS1.IMAGELIB must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.IMAGELIB is a partitioned data set containing universal character set (UCS), forms control buffer (FCB), and printer control information. Most IBM standard UCS images are included in SYS1.IMAGELIB during system installation. This data set should be protected as a z/OS system data set.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.IMAGELIB

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.

2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.IMAGELIB and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO must ensure that UPDATE and/or ALLOCATE access to SYS1.IMAGELIB is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect SYS1.IMAGELIB.

SYS1.IMAGELIB is automatically APF-authorized. This data set contains modules, images, tables, and character sets which are essential to system print services.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98055

Group Title: ES000270

Rule ID: SV-107175r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000270](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to SYS1.SVCLIB must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: This data set is automatically APF-authorized, contains system SVCs, and may also contain I/O appendages. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.SVCLIB,
 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3.Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.SVCLIB and check Audit Flag settings
 1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO must ensure that update and allocate access to SYS1.SVCLIB is limited to system

programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged and reviewed. Periodic reviews of access authorization to critical system files must be performed. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes for SYS1.SVCLIB. SYS1.SVCLIB contains SVCs and I/O appendages as such: they are very powerful and will be strictly controlled to avoid compromising system integrity.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98057

Group Title: ES000280

Rule ID: SV-107161r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000280](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to SYS1.LPALIB must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.LPALIB is automatically APF-authorized during IPL processing and can contain SVCs. LPA modules, once loaded into the Link Pack Area, are capable of performing APF-authorized functions. This authorization allows a program to bypass various levels of security checking. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.LPALIB
 - 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
 - 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3.
 - Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
 - 4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.LPALIB and check Audit Flag settings
 - 1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency.

Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect SYS1.LPALIB.

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to SYS1.LPALIB is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98059

Group Title: ES000290

Rule ID: SV-107163r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000290](#)

Rule Title: Libraries included in the system REXXLIB concatenation must be properly protected

Vulnerability Discussion: The libraries included in the system REXXLIB concatenation can contain program modules which possess a significant level of security bypass capability. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following report produced by the Data Set and Resource Data Collection:

SENSITIVE.RPT(RACFREXX)

b) Verify that the REXXLIB datasets are properly restricted. If the following guidance is true, this is NOT A FINDING.

- 1) RACF data set access authorizations restrict Update or higher access to z/OS systems programming personnel.
- 2) RACF data set access authorizations restrict READ to Appropriate Started Tasks, Auditors, and the AXRUSER, specified in the PARMLIB AXR00 AXRUSER().
- 3) All (i.e., failures and success) data set access authorities Update or Higher is logged
- 4) RACF data set access authorizations specify UACC(NONE), that GAC is either NONE or not specified, and NOWARNING.

c) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect APF Authorized Libraries.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98061

Group Title: ES000300

Rule ID: SV-107165r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000300](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to all LPA libraries must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: LPA modules, once loaded into the Link Pack Area, are capable of performing APFauthorized functions. This authorization allows a program to bypass various levels of security checking. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IACcontrols: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

a) Generate batch report JCL, as follows:

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option B - Sensitive/Critical Data Sets Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Select LPA List Table by entering an S next to the prompt
6. At the bottom of the screen, select the following options as shown below:

Specify YES or NO to include the following:

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

7. Press ENTER

8. Select QG on the next panel, when the QG edit screen is displayed enter the following beginning in column 2

LD DA('&DSNAME') VOLUME(&DSVOL) ALL

LD DA('&DSNAME') GEN ALL

9. Type ACCEPT at the Command line

10. Press ENTER

11. Select E on the JCL Submit Processing panel, when the generated JCL is displayed modify the following:

//VSSQGOUT DD DSN=&&TEMPQG, UNIT=SYSALLDA,

// DISP=(,PASS),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80),

// SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))

12. Add the following statements after the last generated JCL statement:

```
//STEP02 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01  
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSTSIN DD DSN=&&TEMPQG,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
```

b) Review the report output for all listed libraries,

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a FINDING.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.

c) Review the RACF Dataset List output for all listed libraries and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

d) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

e) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect LPA Libraries.

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to all LPA libraries is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98063

Group Title: ES000310

Rule ID: SV-107167r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000310](#)

Rule Title: Write or greater access to Libraries containing EXIT modules must be limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: System exits have a wide range of uses and capabilities within any system. Exits may introduce security exposures within the system, modify audit trails, and alter individual user capabilities. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: System Exit Lib Name(s)
 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for System Exit Lib Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings
 1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Using the ACP, protect the data sets associated with all product exits installed in the z/OS environment. This reduces the potential of a hacker adding a routine to a library and possibly creating an exposure. See that all exits are tracked using a CMP. Develop usermods to include the source/object code used to support the exits. Have Systems programming personnel review all z/OS and other product exits to confirm that the exits are required and are correctly installed.

Have the IAO validate that all update and alter access to libraries containing z/OS and other system level exits will be logged using the ACP s facilities. Only systems programming personnel will be authorized to update the libraries containing z/OS and other system level exits.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98065

Group Title: ES000320

Rule ID: SV-107169r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000320](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to all system-level product installation libraries are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: System-level product installation libraries constitute the majority of the systems software libraries. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SMP/E CSI Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.

2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SMP/E CSI Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect System-level product installation libraries,

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to all system-level product execution libraries are limited to system programmers only.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98067

Group Title: ES000330

Rule ID: SV-107171r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000330](#)

Rule Title: Access to SYSTEM DUMP data sets are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: System DUMP data sets are used to record system data areas and virtual storage associated with system task failures. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: System Dump Dataset Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify READ, UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding. READ access has only been granted to personnel having justification to review the dump datasets for debugging purposes.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify READ, UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding. READ access has only been granted to personnel having justification to review the dump datasets for debugging purposes.

b) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

c) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that access to SYSTEM DUMP data set(s) is limited to system programmers only, unless a letter justifying access is filed with the IAO.

Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to restrict access to these data sets.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98069

Group Title: ES000340

Rule ID: SV-107173r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000340](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to all APF -authorized libraries are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Authorized Program List designates those libraries that can contain program modules which possess a significant level of security bypass capability. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IACControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

a) Generate batch report JCL, as follows:

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option B - Sensitive/Critical Data Sets Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Select Authorized Program Facility (APF) Table by entering an S next to the prompt
6. At the bottom of the screen, select the following options as shown below:

Specify YES or NO to include the following:

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

7. Press ENTER

8. Select QG on the next panel, when the QG edit screen is displayed enter the following beginning in column 2

LD DA('&DSNAME') VOLUME(&DSVOL)

LD DA('&DSNAME') GEN

9. Type ACCEPT at the Command line

10. Press ENTER

11. Select E on the JCL Submit Processing panel, when the generated JCL is displayed modify the following:

//VSSQGOUT DD DSN=&&TEMPQG, UNIT=SYSALLDA,

// DISP=(,PASS),DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80),

// SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))

b) Add the following statements after the last generated JCL statement:

```
//STEP02 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01  
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSTSIN DD DSN=&&TEMPQG,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
```

c) Review the report output for all listed libraries,

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a FINDING.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a FINDING.
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a FINDING.

d) Review the RACF Dataset List output for all listed libraries and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a FINDING.

e) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

f) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect APF Authorized Libraries.

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to all APF-authorized libraries are limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98071

Group Title: ES000350

Rule ID: SV-107175r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000350](#)

Rule Title: Access to SYS1.LINKLIB is not properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: This data set is automatically APF-authorized, contains system SVCs and the base PPT. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.LINKLIB,
1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3.
Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.LINKLIB and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged

this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required. Under the ACPs SYS1.LINKLIB is always indicated as a program control library because it is a member of the MVS link list. Access is limited to system programmers only and all update and allocate access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98073

Group Title: ES000360

Rule ID: SV-107177r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000360](#)

Rule Title: The RACF System REXX IRRPWREX security data set must be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: The RACF System REXX named IRRPWREX contains sensitive access control and password information for the operating system environment and system resources. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of passwords, the operating system environment, ACP (Access Control Program), and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Manager IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following report produced by the Data Set and Resource Data Collection:

SENSITIVE.RPT(RACFREXX)

OR

b) Refer to the zOS system REXXLIB concatenation found in SYS1. PARMLIB (AXR) for the data set that contains the REXX for Password exit named IRRPWREX and the defined AXRUSER.

c) Verify that the data set that contains IRRPWREX is properly restricted. If the following guidance is true, this is

NOT A FINDING.

1) RACF data set access authorizations restrict READ to AXRUSER, z/OS systems programming personnel, security personnel, and auditors.

2 RACF data set access authorizations restrict UPDATE to security personnel using a documented change management procedure to provide a mechanism for access and revoking of access after use.

3) All (i.e., failures and success) data set access authorities (i.e., READ, UPDATE, and CONTROL) is logged

4) RACF data set access authorizations specify UACC(NONE) and NOWARNING.

d) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Ensure that read access is restricted to security administrators, systems programmers, and auditors.

Ensure that there is a procedure documented with the ISSM that defines a change management process to provide mechanism for granting Update access to security administrators on an exception basis. The process should contain procedures to revoke access when documented update is completed.

Ensure all failures and successes data set access authorities for RACF data set that contains the Password exit is logged.

Examples:

ad 'sys3.racf.rexxlib.*' uacc(none) owner(sys3)

audit(all(read))

Permit 'sys3.racf.rexxlib.**' id(<syspautd> <secaaudt> <audtaudt> AXRUSER) acc(r)
Permit 'sys3.racf.rexxlib.**' id(<secaaudt>) acc(u)

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002357

Group ID (Vulid): V-98075

Group Title: ES000370

Rule ID: SV-107179r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000370](#)

Rule Title: The ACP security data sets and/or databases must be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Access Control Program (ACP) database files contain all access control information for the operating system environment and system resources. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: RACF database Name(s)
1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), with ACCESS other than NONE, this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify READ access has only been granted to Auditors, DASD Batch Jobs, system programming personnel, security personnel, and/or batch jobs that perform ACP maintenance, otherwise this is a finding.
 4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify READ access

has only been granted to Auditors, DASD Batch Jobs, system programming personnel, security personnel, and/or batch jobs that perform ACP maintenance, otherwise this is a finding.

5. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, security personnel, and/or batch jobs that perform ACP maintenance, otherwise this is a finding.
6. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, security personnel, and/or batch jobs that perform ACP maintenance, otherwise this is a finding.

NOTE: For RACF the dataset that contains the REXX for Password exit must be included in these files. Examine system REXLIB concatenation for this dataset name.

- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for RACF Database Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings

1. If All (i.e., failures and successes) data set access authorities (i.e. READ, UPDATE, ALTER, and CONTROL) for ACP security data sets and/or databases are not logged this is a finding
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review access authorization to critical security database files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes required to protect the ACP Files.

Ensure that READ and/or greater access to all ACP files and/or databases are limited to system programmers and/or security personnel, and/or batch jobs that perform ACP maintenance. READ access can be given to auditors and DASD batch. All accesses to ACP files and/or databases are logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002357

Group ID (Vulid): V-98077

Group Title: ES000380

Rule ID: SV-107181r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000380](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to data sets used to backup and/or dump SMF collection files are not limited to system programmers and/or batch jobs that perform SMF dump processing.

Vulnerability Discussion: SMF backup data sets are those data sets to which SMF data has been offloaded in order to ensure a historical tracking of individual user accountability. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SMF Dump/Backup

Name(s) 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.

2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3.

Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel and batch job userids that perform SMF processing, otherwise this is a finding.

4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel and batch job userids that perform SMF processing, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SMF Dump/Backup Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings. Verify that Audit Successes is set to READ or UPDATE, and Audit Failures is set to READ or UPDATE".

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to datasets used to backup and/or dump SMF collection files is limited to system programmers and/or batch jobs that perform SMF dump processing and all dataset access is logged.

Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect datasets used to backup and/or dump SMF Collection Files.

In z/OS systems, SMF data is the ultimate record of system activity. Therefore, SMF data is of the most sensitive and critical nature. While the length of time for which SMF data will be retained is not specifically regulated, it is imperative that the information is available for the longest possible time period in case of subsequent investigations. The statute of limitations varies according to the nature of a crime. It may vary by

jurisdiction, and some crimes are not subject to a statute of limitations. Apply the following guidelines to the retention of SMF data for all DOD systems:

- (a) Retain at least two (2) copies of the SMF data.
- (b) Maintain SMF data for a minimum of one year.
- (c) All update and alter access authority to SMF history files will be logged using the ACP's facilities. Only systems programming personnel and batch jobs that perform SMF functions will be authorized to update the SMF files.

CCI: CCI-000162

CCI: CCI-000163

CCI: CCI-000164

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98079

Group Title: ES000390

Rule ID: SV-107183r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000390](#)

Rule Title: All system PROCLIB data sets must be limited to system programmers only

Vulnerability Discussion: Unauthorized access to PROCLIB data sets referenced in the JES2 procedure can allow unauthorized modifications to STCs and other system level procedures. This could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: JES2 Proc Lib
Name(s) 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3.
Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

c) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that all WRITE and/or greater access to all PROCLIBs referenced in the Master JCL and JES2 or JES3 procedure for started tasks (STCs) and TSO logons are restricted to systems programming personnel only.

Suggestion on how to update system to be compliant with this vulnerability:

NOTE: All examples are only examples and may not reflect your operating environment.

Obtain only the PROCLIB data sets that contain STC and TSO procedures. The data sets to be reviewed are obtained using the following steps:

- All data sets contained in the MSTJCLxx member in the DD statement concatenation for IEFPSI and IEFJOBS.
- The data set in the PROCxx DD statement concatenation that are within the JES2 procedure or identified in the JES2 dynamic PROCLIB definitions. The specific PROCxx DD statement that is used is obtained from the PROCLIB entry for the JOBCLASSES of STC and TSU. The following is what data sets the process will obtain for analysis:

MSTJCL00

```
//MSTJCL00 JOB MSGLEVEL=(1,1),TIME=1440
// EXEC PGM=IEEMB860,DPRTY=(15,15)
//STCINRDR DD SYSOUT=(A,INTRDR)
//TSOINRDR DD SYSOUT=(A,INTRDR)
//IEFPDSI DD DSN=SYS3.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
// DD DSN=SYS2.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
// DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
//SYSUADS DD DSN=SYS1.UADS,DISP=SHR
//SYSLBC DD DSN=SYS1.BROADCAST,DISP=SHR
```

JES2

```
//JES2 PROC
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=HASJES20,PARM=NOREQ,
// DPRTY=(15,15),TIME=1440,PERFORM=9
//ALTPARM DD DISP=SHR,
// DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(JES2BKUP)
//HASPPARM DD DISP=SHR,
// DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(JES2PARM)
//PROC00 DD DSN=SYS3.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
// DD DSN=SYS2.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
// DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR <<====
//PROC01 DD DSN=SYS4.USERPROC,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS3.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS2.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//IEFRDER DD SYSOUT=*
//HASPLIST DD DDNAME=IEFRDER
```

JES2 initialization parameter JOBCLASS PROCLIB entries

JOBCLASS(*) ACCT=NO, /* ACCT # NOT REQUIRED (DEF.)*/

PROCLIB=01, /* DEFAULT TO //PROC01 DD (DEF.)*/

JOBCLASS(STC) AUTH=ALL, /* ALLOW ALL COMMANDS (DEF.)*/

PROCLIB=00, /* USE //PROC00 DD (DEF.)*/

JOBCLASS(TSU) AUTH=ALL, /* ALLOW ALL COMMANDS (DEF.)*/

PROCLIB=00, /* USE //PROC00 DD (DEF.)*/

PROCLIB data set that will be used in the access authorization process:

```
SYS3.PROCLIB
SYS2.PROCLIB
SYS1.PROCLIB
```

The following PROCLIB data set will NOT be used or evaluated:

SYS4.USERPROC

Recommendation for sites:

The following are recommendations for the sites to ensure only PROCLIB data sets that contain the STC and TSO procedures are protected.

- Remove all application PROCLIB data sets from MSTJCLxx and JES2 procedures. The customer will have all JCL changed to use the JCLLIB JCL statement to refer to the application PROCLIB data sets.

Example:

```
//USERPROC JCLLIB ORDER=(SYS4.USERPROC)
```

- Remove all access to the application PROCLIB data sets and only authorize system programming personnel WRITE and/or greater access to these data sets.
- Document the application PROCLIB data set access for the customers that require WRITE and/or greater access. Use this documentation as justification for the inappropriate access created by the scripts.
- Change MSTJCLxx and JES2 procedure to identify STC and TSO PROCLIB data sets separate from application PROCLIB data sets. The following is a list of actions that can be performed to accomplish this recommendation:
 - a. Ensure that MSTJCLxx contains only PROCLIB data sets that contain STC and TSO procedures.
 - b. If an application PROCLIB data set is required for JES2, ensure that the JES2 procedure specifies more than one PROCxx DD statement concatenation or identified in the JES2 dynamic PROCLIB definitions. Identify one PROCxx DD statement data set concatenation that contains the STC and TSO PROCLIB data sets. Identify one or more additional PROCxx DD statements that can contain any other PROCLIB data sets. The concatenation of the additional PROCxx DD statements can contain the same data sets that are identified in the PROCxx DD statement for STC and TSO. The following is an example of the JES2 procedure:

```
//JES2 PROC
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=HASJES20,PARM=NOREQ,
// DPTTY=(15,15),TIME=1440,PERFORM=9
//ALTPARM DD DISP=SHR,
// DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(JES2BKUP)
//HASPPARM DD DISP=SHR,
// DSN=SYS1.PARMLIB(JES2PARM)
//PROC00 DD DSN=SYS3.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS2.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//PROC01 DD DSN=SYS4.USERPROC,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS3.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS2.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//IEFRDER DD SYSOUT=*
//HASPLIST DD DDNAME=IEFRDER
```

- c. Ensure that the JES2 configuration file is changed to specify that the PROCLIB entry for the STC and TSU JOBCLASSES point to the proper PROCxx entry within the JES2 procedure or JES2 dynamic PROCLIB

definitions that contain the STC and/or TSO procedures. All other JOBCLASSES can specify a PROCLIB entry that uses the same PROCxx or any other PROCxx DD statement identified in the JES2 procedure or identified in the JES2 dynamic PROCLIB definitions. The following is an example of the JES2 initialization parameters:

```
JOBCLASS(*) ACCT=NO, /* ACCT # NOT REQUIRED (DEF.)*/
```

```
PROCLIB=01, /* DEFAULT TO //PROC01 DD (DEF.)*/
```

```
JOBCLASS(STC) AUTH=ALL, /* ALLOW ALL COMMANDS (DEF.)*/
```

```
PROCLIB=00, /* USE //PROC00 DD (DEF.)*/
```

```
JOBCLASS(TSU) AUTH=ALL, /* ALLOW ALL COMMANDS (DEF.)*/
```

```
PROCLIB=00, /* USE //PROC00 DD (DEF.)*/
```

- d. Ensure that only system programming personnel are authorized WRITE and/or greater access to PROCLIB data sets that contain STC and TSO procedures.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98081

Group Title: ES000400

Rule ID: SV-107185r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000400](#)

Rule Title: Access to System page data sets (i.e., PLPA, COMMON, and LOCALx) are not limited to system programmers.

Vulnerability Discussion: Page data sets hold individual pages of virtual storage when they are paged out of real storage. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: System Page
Dataset(s) 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
3. Under the Standard Access list, verify READ or higher access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

c) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Verify that the ACP data set rules for system page data sets (PLPA, COMMON, and LOCAL) restrict access to only systems programming personnel.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98083

Group Title: ES000410

Rule ID: SV-107187r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000410](#)

Rule Title: MCS consoles access authorization(s) for CONSOLE resource(s) must be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: MCS consoles can be used to issue operator commands. Failure to properly control access to MCS consoles could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive operator commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Display CONSOLE class information as follows:

a) From Analyzer main Menu

1. Go to option 3
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option L - Parmlib Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Press ENTER again
6. On the next screen, look for entry CONSOLxx under the first LOADxx entry
7. Enter V next to CONSOLxx to view details
8. Press ENTER
9. Either save the information to another dataset or print the dataset directly.
10. Locate all console definitions by searching for NAME and noting each defined console name.b) In

Administrator

1. Select option 3 on the main menu
2. Press ENTER
3. Select General Resource reports, option 4
4. Press ENTER
5. Enter Extract on the COMMAND line, Press ENTER
6. Select Access List report, option 4
7. Select the Batch option by changing the Batch/Online option to a B
8. Enter the value CONSOLE on the CLASS field prompt
9. Press ENTER
10. On the Processing Options panel enter Y on Explode RACF Groups in access list after detail line 11.
Press ENTER
12. Select S on the JCL Submit Processing
13. Review report output and ensure the following items are in effect for all MCS consoles:
 - a. Each console defined in the CONSOLxx parm lib members is defined to RACF with a corresponding profile in the CONSOLE resource class.
 - b. Each CONSOLE profile is defined with UACC(NONE).

- c. The userid associated with each console has READ access to the corresponding resource defined in the CONSOLE resource class.
- d. Access authorization for CONSOLE resources restricts READ access to Z/OS systems programming personnel and/or operations staff.

c) If all of the above in step 13 are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above in step 13 are untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO must ensure that all MCS consoles are defined to the CONSOLE resource class and READ access is limited to operators and system programmers.

Review the MCS console resources defined to z/OS and the ACP, and ensure they conform to those outlined below.

Each console defined in the CONSOLxx parmlib member is defined to RACF with a corresponding profile in the CONSOLE resource class. See the IBM zOS OPERATIONS AND PLANNING guide for further information.

Each CONSOLE profile is defined with UACC(NONE). A sample command file to accomplish items #1 and #2 is shown here:

```
RDEF CONSOLE MMDMST UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspau)
RDEF CONSOLE MMD041 UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspau)
RDEF CONSOLE MMDSCN UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspau)
RDEF CONSOLE ** UACC(NONE) OWNER(syspau) DATA('** represents all consoles not specifically defined')
```

Do not permit any user or group access to the ** profile. If a new console is added to the CONSOLxx member of it will be covered by this profile and a subsequent error will display in the log which will allow identification of the undefined console.

The userid associated with each console will have READ access to the corresponding resource defined in the CONSOLE resource class. A sample command file to accomplish this is shown here:

Note that the actual console groupid & userids are defined as part of ACP00292.

```
PE MMDMST CL(CONSOLE) ID(mmdmst)
PE MMDSCN CL(CONSOLE) ID(mmdscn)
PE MMD041 CL(CONSOLE) ID(mmd041)
```

Access authorization for CONSOLE resources restricts READ access to operations and system programming personnel. A sample command file showing a permission of READ access for sysprogs and operators is shown here:

```
PE MMDMST CL(CONSOLE) ID(syspau operau)
PE MMDSCN CL(CONSOLE) ID(syspau operau)
PE MMD041 CL(CONSOLE) ID(syspau operau)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98085

Group Title: ES000420

Rule ID: SV-107189r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000420](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to the JES2 System data sets (e.g., Spool, Checkpoint, and Initialization parameters) are not limited to system programmers only.

Vulnerability Discussion: The JES2 System data sets are a common repository for all jobs submitted to the system and the associated printout and configuration of the JES2 environment. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: JES2 System Dataset Name(s)
 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
 4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for JES2 System Dataset Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings
 1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Limit read and write access to the JES2 started task. Limit allocate/alter access to the systems programming staff. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect JES2 System datasets (spool, checkpoint, and parmlib datasets)

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to JES2 System datasets (spool, checkpoint, and parmlib datasets) are limited to system programmers only. For example all SYS1.HASP* data sets.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98087

Group Title: ES000430

Rule ID: SV-107191r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000430](#)

Rule Title: IEASYMUP resource will be protected in accordance with proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: Failure to properly control access to the IEASYMUP resource could result in unauthorized personnel modifying sensitive z/OS symbolics. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Note: Generic profiles can be used (i.e. IEA*.* instead of IEASYMUP.*) for the checks below, as long as all the detailed requirements re access and logging as specified below, are met.

Ensure the following are in affect:

- a) A covering profile for IEASYMUP.* exists and is defined with UACC(NONE) and AUDIT is specified as SUCCESSES(UPDATE) and FAILURES(READ)
- b) Only systems programmers, DASD Administrators and Tape Librarians are in the access list with UPDATE access or higher
- c) To verify
 1. From the Administrator Main Menu Choose Option 3;4 (Security Server Reports, General Resource Profiles)
 2. Tab down to CLASS and enter FACILITY
 3. Tab down PROFILE and enter IEA*
 - 4) Find the covering profile for IEASYMUP.* and type LR next to it in the command line.
 - 5) Review the output against the requirements in a. above... d) If all of the above are TRUE, there is NO FINDING. e) If either
 - a covering profile is not found or
 - audit logging per above (SUCCESSES (UPDATE), FAILURES(READ)) is not specified or
 - personnel other than Systems Programmers, DASD Administrators or Tape Librarians have UPDATE or higher access then , there is a FINDING..

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that the System level symbolic resources are defined to the FACILITY resource class and protected. UPDATE access to the System level symbolic resources are limited to System Programmers, DASD Administrators, and/or Tape Library personnel. All access is logged. Ensure the guidelines for the resources and/or generic equivalent are followed.

Limit access to the IEASYMUP resources to above personnel with UPDATE and/or greater access.

The following commands are provided as a sample for implementing resource controls:

```
rdef facility ieasymup.* uacc(none) owner(admin)
audit(all(read)) -
    data('protected per acp00350')
```

```
rdef facility ieasymup.symbolname uacc(none) owner(admin)
audit(all(read)) -
    data('protected per acp00350')
```

```
pe ieasymup.symbolname cl(facility) id(<dasdaudt) acc(u)
pe ieasymup.symbolname cl(facility) id(<syspauudt) acc(u)
pe ieasymup.symbolname cl(facility) id(<tapeaudt) acc(u)
```

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98089

Group Title: ES000440

Rule ID: SV-107193r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000440](#)

Rule Title: The JES(BATCHALLRACF) SETROPTS value is not set to JES(BATCHALLRACF).

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0380: CAT II) JES(BATCHALLRACF) specifies that JES is to test for the presence of a USERID and password on the job statement or for propagated RACF identification information for all batch jobs.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the UserID Options area and locate the JES(BATCHALLRACF) field prompt, under JES on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the JES(BATCHALLRACF) attribute.

1. If the JES(BATCHALLRACF) IS SET TO y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the JES(BATCHALLRACF) value is NOT SET to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that JES(BATCHALLRACF) SETROPTS value is set to JES (BATCHALLRACF). This specifies that JES is to test for a userid and password on the job statement or for propagated RACF identification information for all batch jobs.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a status of JES BATCHALLRACF.

(1) JES BATCHALLRACF is activated with the command SETR JES(BATCHALLRACF).

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98091

Group Title: ES000450

Rule ID: SV-107195r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000450](#)

Rule Title: The JES(BATCHALLRACF) SETROPTS value is not set to JES(BATCHALLRACF).

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0380: CAT II) JES(BATCHALLRACF) specifies that JES is to test for the presence of a USERID and password on the job statement or for propagated RACF identification information for all batch jobs.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The AC

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the UserID Options area and locate the JES(BATCHALLRACF) field prompt, under JES on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the JES(BATCHALLRACF) attribute.

1. If the JES(BATCHALLRACF) IS SET TO y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the JES(BATCHALLRACF) value is NOT SET to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text:

The IAO will ensure that JES(BATCHALLRACF) SETROPTS value is set to JES(BATCHALLRACF). This specifies that JES is to test for a userid and password on the job statement or for propagated RACF identification information for all batch jobs.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a status of JES BATCHALLRACF.

(1) JES BATCHALLRACF is activated with the command SETR JES(BATCHALLRACF).

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98093

Group Title: ES000460

Rule ID: SV-107197r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000460](#)

Rule Title: The JES(XBMALLRACF) SETROPTS value is not set to JES(XBMALLRACF).

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0400: CAT II) XBMALLRACF ensures that (assuming you have JES configured to support XBM jobs) any XBM job submitted by a user must have a RACF identity or the job will fail. This is used only in JES2.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the UserID Options area and locate the XBMALLRACF field prompt, under JES on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the JES(XBMALLRACF) attribute. 1. If the JES(XBMALLRACF) value is set to Y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the JES(XBMALLRACF) value is not set to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that JES(XBMALLRACF) SETROPTS value is set to JES(XBMALLRACF).
This

specifies that JES is set to test for a userid and password on the job statement or for propagated RACF identification information for all jobs run under the execution batch monitor.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a status of JES-XBMALLRACF.

(1) XBMALLRACF is activated with the command SETR XBMALLRACF.

CCI: CCI-000764

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98095

Group Title: ES000470

Rule ID: SV-107199r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000470](#)

Rule Title: The OPERAUDIT SETROPTS value is not set to OPERAUDIT.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0420: CAT II) OPERAUDIT specifies whether RACF is to log all actions, such as accesses to resources and commands, allowed only because a user has the OPERATIONS or group OPERATIONS attribute.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, locate the OPERAUDIT field prompt, under Auditing Options on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the OPERAUDIT attribute.

1. If the OPERAUDIT value is set to Y, there is
NO FINDING
2. If the OPERAUDIT value is not set to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: NOTE: The RACF AUDITOR attribute is required in order to specify SETROPTS OPERAUDIT and also to display the OPERAUDIT attribute with the SETROPTS LIST command.

The IAO will ensure that OPERAUDIT SETROPTS value is set to OPERAUDIT. This specifies that RACF logs all actions such as accesses to resources and commands for a user who has operations or group operations attribute.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ATTRIBUTES.

(1) Logging of all actions, such as accesses to resources and commands, allowed only because a user has the OPERATIONS or group-OPERATIONS attribute is activated with the command SETR OPERAUDIT.

CCI: CCI-002234

CCI: CCI-002262

Group ID (Vulid): V-98097

Group Title: ES000480

Rule ID: SV-107201r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000480](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value specified is not in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0450: CAT II) The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value is set to 1 or 2. This value specifies the number of consecutive incorrect password attempts RACF allows before it revokes the USERID on the next incorrect attempt. If you specify REVOKE, ensure INITSTATS are in effect.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the REVOKE field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen.
6. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the UserID Options area and ensure that Initstats is set to Y

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the PASSWORD(REVOKE) attribute.

1. If the PASSWORD(REVOKE) value is set to either 1 or 2, and Initstats is set to Y, there is NO

FINDING 2. If the PASSWORD(REVOKE) value is not set to either 1 or 2, or Initstats is set to N, this is

a FINDING c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value is set to 1 or 2. This specifies the number of consecutive incorrect password attempts RACF allows before it revokes the USERID on the next incorrect attempt. If you specify REVOKE, ensure INITSTATS are in effect.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD REVOKE.

(1) Setting the password REVOKE to 2 invalid attempts activated with the command SETR PASSWORD (REVOKE(2)).

CCI: CCI-000044

Group ID (Vulid): V-98099

Group Title: ES000490

Rule ID: SV-107203r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000490](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value specified is not in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0450: CAT II) The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value is set to 1 or 2. This value specifies the number of consecutive incorrect password attempts RACF allows before it revokes the USERID on the next incorrect attempt. If you specify REVOKE, ensure INITSTATS are in effect.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the REVOKE field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen.
6. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the UserID Options area and ensure that Initstats is set to Y

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the PASSWORD(REVOKE) attribute.

1. If the PASSWORD(REVOKE) value is set to either 1 or 2, and Initstats is set to Y, there is NO

FINDING 2. If the PASSWORD(REVOKE) value is not set to either 1 or 2, or Initstats is set to N, this is

a FINDING c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text:

The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(REVOKE) SETROPTS value is set to 1 or 2. This specifies the number of consecutive incorrect password attempts RACF allows before it revokes the USERID on the next incorrect attempt. If you specify REVOKE, ensure INITSTATS are in effect.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD REVOKE.

(1) Setting the password REVOKE to 2 invalid attempts activated with the command SETR PASSWORD (REVOKE(2)).

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-002238

Group ID (Vulid): V-98101

Group Title: ES000500

Rule ID: SV-107205r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000500](#)

Rule Title: SYS1.PARMLIB is not limited to only system programmers.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.PARMLIB contains the parameters which control system IPL, configuration characteristics, security facilities, and performance. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

- a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SYS1.PARMLIB,
 1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule) with an access other than NONE, this is a finding.
 2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding
 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify, that
 - a. READ access is restricted to System Level Started Tasks, Authorized Data Center Personnel, Auditors, Systems Programmers and Domain Level Security Administrators, otherwise this is a finding.
 - b. UPATE access is only granted to Systems Programming Personnel and/or Domain Level Security Administrators
 - c. ALTER access is only been granted to System Programming Personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
 4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify, that
 - a. READ access is restricted to System Level Started Tasks, Authorized Data Center Personnel, Auditors, Systems Programmers and Domain Level Security Administrators, otherwise this is a finding.
 - b. UPATE access is only granted to Systems Programming Personnel and/or Domain Level Security Administrators
 - c. ALTER access is only been granted to System Programming Personnel, otherwise this is a finding.
- b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SYS1.PARMLIB and check Audit Flag settings
 1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a FINDING.
- c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that update and alter access to SYS1.PARMLIB is limited to system programmers only and all update and alter access is logged.

Review access authorization to critical system files. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required

The IAO will implement controls to specify the valid users authorized to update the SYS1.PARMLIB concatenation. All update and alter access to libraries in the concatenation will be logged using the ACP's facilities.

1. That systems programming personnel will be authorized to update and alter the SYS1.PARMLIB concatenation.
2. That domain level security administrators can be authorized to update the SYS1.PARMLIB concatenation.
3. That System Level Started Tasks, authorized Data Center personnel, and auditor can be authorized read access by the IAO.
4. That all update and alter access is logged.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98103

Group Title: ES000510

Rule ID: SV-107207r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000510](#)

Rule Title: The SAUDIT SETROPTS value specified is improperly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: SAUDIT specifies whether RACF is to log all RACF commands issued by users with the SPECIAL or group SPECIAL attribute.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, locate the SAUDIT field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen under Auditing options.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the SAUDIT attribute.

1. If the SAUDIT values is set to Y, there is NO FINDING

2. If the SAUDIT values is set to N, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

NOTE that in order to set or list the SAUDIT value, the RACF AUDITOR attribute is required. Reference the documentation for the SETROPTS command in the RACF Command Language Reference.

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for SAUDIT.

(1) SAUDIT is activated and set to the required value by issuing the command SETR SAUDIT.

CCI: CCI-000172

CCI: CCI-002724

Group ID (Vulid): V-00000

Group Title: ES000520

Rule ID: SV-107209r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000520](#)

Rule Title: The IBM RACF SETROPTS SAUDIT value must be specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Without generating audit records that are specific to the security and mission needs of the organization, it would be difficult to establish, correlate, and investigate the events relating to an incident or identify those responsible for one.

Audit records can be generated from various components within the information system (e.g., module or policy filter).

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, locate the SAUDIT field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen under Auditing options.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the SAUDIT attribute.

1. If the SAUDIT values is set to Y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the SAUDIT values is set to N, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text:

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

NOTE that in order to set or list the SAUDIT value, the RACF AUDITOR attribute is required. Reference the documentation for the SETROPTS command in the RACF Command Language Reference.

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for SAUDIT.

(1) SAUDIT is activated and set to the required value by issuing the command SETR SAUDIT.

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-000172

Group ID (Vulid): V-98107

Group Title: ES000530

Rule ID: SV-107211r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000530](#)

Rule Title: The REALDSN SETROPTS value specified is improperly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: REALDSN specifies that RACF is to record, in any SMF log records and operator messages, the real data set name (not the naming-conventions name) used on the data set commands and during resource access checking and resource definition.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Dataset Options area and locate the REALDSN field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the REALDSN attribute.

1. If the REALDSN value is set to Y, there is NO

FINDING

2. If the REALDSN value is not set to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for the REALDSN Option.

(1) REALDSN is ACTIVATED by issuing the command SETR REALDSN.

CCI: CCI-001353

Group ID (Vulid): V-98109

Group Title: ES000540

Rule ID: SV-123r2_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000540](#)

Rule Title: Update and allocate access to SMF collection files (i.e., SYS1.MANx) are not limited to system programmers and/or batch jobs that perform SMF dump processing.

Vulnerability Discussion: SMF data collection is the system activity journaling facility of the z/OS system. With the proper parameter designations it serves as the basis to ensure individual user accountability. SMF data is the primary source for cost charge back in DISA. Unauthorized access could result in the compromise of logging and recording of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IACControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Note: Refer to Set up for RACF Data Analysis found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc.

a) Review the report output and locate Data set name: SMF Dataset Name(s)

1. Find the GAC field, if it shows a profile name (other than the Special Rule), this is a finding.

2. Find the UACC field, if access is other than NONE, this is a finding 3. Under the Standard Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

4. Under the Conditional Access list, verify UPDATE and ALTER access has only been granted to system programming personnel, otherwise this is a finding.

b) Review the RACF Dataset List output for SMF Dataset Name(s) and check Audit Flag settings

1. If UPDATE and/or ALTER failures and successes are not being logged this is a finding.

c) If none of the above checks indicate a finding then there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above checks indicate a finding then there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required to protect modification or deletion of SMF collection files.

The IAO will ensure that allocate/alter authority to SMF collection files is limited to only systems programming staff and and/or batch jobs that perform SMF dump processing and ensure the accesses are being logged.

CCI: CCI-000162

CCI: CCI-000163

CCI: CCI-000164

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98111

Group Title: ES000550

Rule ID: SV-107215r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000550](#)

Rule Title: The SETROPTS RVARYPW values will be properly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: RVARYPW specifies passwords that an operator is to use to respond with requests to approve RVARY command processing.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

- a) Go to option TSO and execute a SETROPTS LIST
- b) If the "INSTALLATION DEFINED RVARY PASSWORD IS IN EFFECT" message for both the SWITCH and STATUS functions and conforms to PASSWORD CONTENT requirements as documented in RACF0460, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the "INSTALLATION DEFINED RVARY PASSWORD IS IN EFFECT" message for both the SWITCH and STATUS functions but does not conform to PASSWORD CONTENT requirements as documented in RACF0460, this is a FINDING.
- d) If the "DEFAULT RVARY PASSWORD IS IN EFFECT" message for the SWITCH or STATUS functions, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that the RVARYPW passwords are specified and conform to password requirements documented in RACF0460. The IAO will evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option and develop a plan of action to implement the control option as required.

A sample command for setting both the SWITCH and STATUS passwords are shown here:

```
SETR RVARYPW(SWITCH(Wxy$8Pqu) STATUS(pbZ0@wL2))
```

CCI: CCI-001813

Group ID (Vulid): V-98113

Group Title: ES000560

Rule ID: SV-107217r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000560](#)

Rule Title: IBM RACF must define WARN = NO on all profiles.

Vulnerability Discussion: Failure to restrict system access to authenticated users negatively impacts operating system security.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select Data Set Profile, option 3 and General Resource Profile option 4d) Press ENTER
- e) On the Data Set Profile screen, select Warning Y
- d) Press ENTER

Review all Dataset and resource profiles in the RACF database.

If any are not defined with WARN = NO, this is a finding.

Fix Text: Define each dataset and resource profile with WARN = NO

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select Data Set Profile, option 3 and General Resource Profile option 4d) Press ENTER
- e) On the Data Set Profile screen, select Warning Y
- d) Press ENTER
- e) Enter VRC command and change Warning to N
- f) Enter GO on command line
- g) Execute VRAEXEC or VRABATCH or VRASCHED to make the change.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98115

Group Title: ES000570

Rule ID: SV-107219r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000570](#)

Rule Title: The PROTECTALL SETROPTS value specified is improperly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: When PROTECTALL processing is active and set to FAIL, the system automatically rejects any request to create or access a data set that is not RACF protected.

Temporary data sets that comply with standard MVS temporary data set naming conventions are excluded from PROTECTALL processing. PROTECTALL requires that data sets be RACF protected. In order for PROTECTALL to work effectively, you must specify GENERIC to activate generic profile checking. Otherwise, RACF would allow users to create or access only data sets protected by discrete profiles.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
 1. Press ENTER
 2. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
 3. Press ENTER
 4. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Dataset Options area and locate the PROTECTALL field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen.
- b) Screen print the display showing the value of the PROTECTALL attribute.
 1. If the SETROPTS PROTECTALL is set to PROTECTALL or PROTECTALL(FAILURE), there is NO FINDING.
 2. If the SETROPTS PROTECTALL parameter is set to NOPROTECTALL or PROTECTALL(WARNING), this is a FINDING. Additional analysis may be required to determine whether this FINDING should be downgraded to a Category II or remain a Category I. Clear and specific documentation must be provided justifying the downgrade to a Category II.
 - a. Example of a Category I FINDING where no further analysis is required:
 1. Control Options: SETROPTS NOPROTECTALL
 - b. Example of a possible Category I FINDING requiring additional analysis:

1. Control Options: SETROPTS PROTECTALL (WARNING). PROTECTALL(WARNING) allows access to a data set only if it is not protected by a profile in the DATASET resource class. Therefore if all sensitive data sets are properly protected by profiles in the DATASET resource class, PROTECTALL(WARNING) will not allow unauthorized access. This situation would justify a downgrade to a Category II.

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for the PROTECTALL Option.

(1) PROTECTALL is ACTIVATED and set to FAIL by issuing the command SETR PROTECTALL(FAIL).

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98117

Group Title: ES000580

Rule ID: SV-107221r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000580](#)

Rule Title: The GRPLIST SETROPTS value is not set to ACTIVE.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0350: CAT II) GRPLIST specifies that RACF processing is to perform group list access checking for all system users. When you specify GRPLIST, a users authority to access a resource is not based only on the authority of the users current connect group; access is based on the authority of any group to which the user is connected.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the UserID Options area and locate the GRPLIST field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the GRPLIST attribute.

1. If the GRPLIST value is set to Y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the GRPLIST value is not set to Y, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that GRPLIST SETROPTS value is set to ACTIVE.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a status of GRPLIST.

(1) List Of Groups Checking is activated with the command SETR GRPLIST.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98119

Group Title: ES000590

Rule ID: SV-107223r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000590](#)

Rule Title: The RETPD SETROPTS value specified is improperly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: RETPD specifies the default RACF security retention period for tape data sets. The security retention period is the number of days that RACF protection is to remain in effect for the tape data set and should be set to a value of 99999.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Dataset Options area and locate the RETPD field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the RETPD attribute.

1. If the RETPD is set to 99999 (which means it never expires), there is NO

FINDING

2. If the RETPD is not set to 99999, this is a

FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for the RETPD (Retention Period) Option.

(1) RETPD is activated and set to the required value by issuing the command SETR RETPD(99999).

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98121

Group Title: ES000600

Rule ID: SV-107225r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000600](#)

Rule Title: The TAPEDSN SETROPTS value specified is improperly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: TAPEDSN activates tape data set protection. When tape data set protection is in effect, RACF can protect individual tape data sets as well as tape volumes.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Dataset options area and locate the TAPEDSN field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the TAPEDSN attribute.

1. If the TAPEDSN value is set to Y, there is NO

FINDING

2. If the TAPEDSN value is set to N, this is

a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for the TAPEDSN Option.

(1) TAPEDSN is ACTIVATED by issuing the command SETR TAPEDSN.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98123

Group Title: ES000610

Rule ID: SV-107227r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000610](#)

Rule Title: The WHEN(PROGRAM) SETROPTS value specified is not active.

Vulnerability Discussion: WHEN(PROGRAM) activates RACF program control, which includes both access control to load modules and program access to data sets.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Dataset options area and locate the PROGRAM field prompt, under WHEN on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the WHEN(PROGRAM) attribute. 1. If the WHEN(PROGRAM) is set to Y, there is NO FINDING
2. If the WHEN(PROGRAM) values is not set to Y, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including the value for the WHEN (PROGRAM) Option.

(1) WHEN(PROGRAM) is ACTIVATED by issuing the command SETR WHEN(PROGRAM).

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98125

Group Title: ES000620

Rule ID: SV-107229r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000620](#)

Rule Title: The use of the RACF AUDITOR privilege is not justified.

Vulnerability Discussion: A user having the AUDITOR attribute has the authority to specify logging options, gives control of logging SMF data and list auditing information. With the AUDITOR attribute, a user could alter SMF logging data so no trace of the activity could be found. This could destroy audit trace information for the RACF system. This attribute should be limited to a minimum number of people. This also applies to the use of Group-Auditor in cases where users are connected to sensitive system dataset HLQ or general resource owning groups with Group-Auditor.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display User ID Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select User Profile, option 1,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the User Reports screen, select User Summary, option 1,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter Y next to the Auditor prompt
- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- j) Press ENTER
- k) Review User Summary report output and ensure that the following items are in effect regarding the AUDITOR attribute:
 1. Authorization to the AUDITOR attribute is restricted to auditing and security personnel.
 2. At minimum, ensure that any users connected to sensitive system dataset HLQ groups or general resource owning groups with the GroupAUDITOR attribute are Auditor and/or Security personnel. Otherwise, Group-AUDITOR is allowed
- l) If both items in (k) are true there is NOFINDING
- m) If either item in (k) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Review all USERIDs with the AU (Manual) - Review all USERIDs with the AUDITOR attribute. Ensure documentation providing justification for access is maintained and filed with the IAO, and that unjustified access is removed.

The AUDITOR attribute is removed from a user with the command: ALU <userid>NOAUDITOR.

To remove the Group-Auditor attribute:

CO <user> GROUP(<groupname>) NOAUDITOR

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98127

Group Title: ES000630

Rule ID: SV-107395r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000630](#)

Rule Title: ACP database is not on a separate physical volume from its backup and recovery datasets.

Vulnerability Discussion: The ACP backup and recovery data files provide the only means of recovering the ACP database in the event of its damage. In the case where this damage is to the physical volume on which it resides, and any of these recovery data files exist on this volume as well, then complete recovery of the ACP database would be extremely difficult, if even possible.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
CODB-2, DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;3. Specify NO for all options on the screen.
Submit the batch job and reference the report output. Review the RACF Databases section of the report.
- b) If the RACF database is not located on the same volume as either its alternate or backup database, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the RACF database is located on the same volume as either its alternate or backup database, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will ensure that placement of ACP files are on a separate volume from its backup and recovery data sets to provide backup and recovery in the event of physical damage to a volume.

Identify the ACP database(s), backup database(s), and recovery data set(s). Develop a plan to keep these data sets on different physical volumes. Implement the movement of these critical ACP files.

File location is an often overlooked factor in system integrity. It is important to ensure that the effects of hardware failures on system integrity and availability are minimized. Avoid collocation of files such as primary and alternate databases. For example, the loss of the physical volume containing the ACP database should not also cause the loss of the ACP backup database as a result of their collocation. Files that will be segregated from each other on separate physical volumes include, but are not limited to, the ACP database and its alternate or backup file.

CCI: CCI-000549

Group ID (Vulid): V-98129

Group Title: ES000640

Rule ID: SV-107233r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000640](#)

Rule Title: ACP database is not backed up on a scheduled basis.

Vulnerability Discussion: Loss of the ACP database would cause an interruption in the service of the operating system environment. If regularly scheduled backups of this database are not processed, system recovery time could be unacceptably long.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

CODB-2, DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to Vulnerability Questions within the SRRAUDIT Dialog Management document.

a) If, based on the information provided, it can be determined that the RACF database is being backed up on a regularly scheduled basis, there is NO FINDING.

b) If it cannot be determined that the RACF database is being backed up on a regularly scheduled basis, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that procedures are in place to backup all ACP files needed for recovery on a scheduled basis.

Identify the ACP database and ensure that documented processes are in place to back up its contents on a regularly scheduled basis.

At a minimum, nightly backup of the ACP databases, and of other critical security files (such as the ACP parameter file). More frequent backups (two or three times daily) will reduce the time necessary to affect recovery. The IAO will verify that the backup job(s) run successfully.

CCI: CCI-000537

Group ID (Vulid): V-98131

Group Title: ES000650

Rule ID: SV-107235r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000650](#)

Rule Title: Batch job user Ids must be properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: Batch jobs are submitted to the operating system under their own USERID. This will identify the batch job with the user for the purpose of accessing resources. BATCHALLRACF ensures that a valid USERID is associated with batch jobs. Jobs that are submitted to the operating system via a scheduling facility must also be identified to the system. Without a batch job having an associated USERID, access to system resources will be limited.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following item found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2):

* Item 11

-

Display SURROGAT resource class information, as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select General Resource Profile, option 4,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the General Resource Reports screen, select Access List, option 4
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Class field and enter SURROGAT
- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the Processing Options panel, enter a Y next to Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line prompt j) Press ENTER
- k) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- l) Press ENTER
- m) If the submission of batch jobs via an automated process (e.g. job scheduler, job submission started task, etc.) is being utilized, ensure the following items are in effect:

1. The SURROGAT resource class is active. Note: This does not need to be checked, automation check is performed in ZUSSR060.

2. On the SURROGAT class Access List report, ensure each batch job userid used for batch submission by a job scheduler (e.g., CONTROL-M, CA-7, CA-Scheduler, etc.) is defined as an execution-userid in a SURROGAT RESOURCE CLASS profile. For example:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT execution-userid.SUBMIT
UACC(NONE) OWNER(execution-userid)
```

3. On the SURROGAT class Access List report, ensure each job scheduler

userid (i.e. surrogate-userid) is permitted surrogate activity to the appropriate SURROGAT profiles. For example:

PERMIT execution-userid.SUBMIT CLASS(SURROGAT)
ID(surrogate-userid) ACCESS(READ)

n) If all of the above in (m) are true, there is NO FINDING

o) If any of the above in (m) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Ensure the following:

1. Associated USERIDs exist for all batch jobs and documentation authorizing access to system resources is maintained and implemented.
2. Set up the userids with the RACF PROTECTED attribute. A sample RACF command to accomplish is shown here: ALU <execution-useridNOPASSWORD NOOIDCARD.

CCI: CCI-000052

CCI: CCI-000724

CCI: CCI-000764

CCI: CCI-000804

Group ID (Vulid): V-98133

Group Title: ES000660

Rule ID: SV-107237r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000660](#)

Rule Title: The use of the RACF SPECIAL Attribute is not justified.

Vulnerability Discussion: The SPECIAL user attribute allows full authorization to modify all profiles in the RACF database and allows the user to perform all RACF functions, except those requiring AUDITOR attributes. This privilege should be limited to the security group and administrators because of the extreme control that these users have. Users with this privilege can alter any profile or resource on the system and could also alter the audit trail information.

The Group-Special attribute allows decentralized RACF control of datasets and resources. In cases where the scope of authority granted to a Group-Special Administrator has an impact on system security, the IAO needs to be fully aware and approve its use.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display User ID Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select User Profile, option 1,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the User Reports screen, select User Summary, option 1,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter Y next to the Special prompt
- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- j) Press ENTER
- k) Return to the Security Server Reports menu, select Connect Reports, option 15l) Press ENTER
- m) On the Connect Reports screen, select Connect Summary, option 1
- n) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- o) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter Y next to the Special prompt.
- p) Press ENTER
- q) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- r) Press ENTER
- s) Review User Summary and Connect Summary report output and ensure that the following items are in effect regarding the SPECIAL and GROUP-SPECIAL attributes:
 1. Authorization to the SPECIAL or GROUP-SPECIAL attribute is restricted to security personnel.

2. At minimum, ensure that any users connected to sensitive system dataset HLQ groups with the Group-SPECIAL attribute are security personnel. Otherwise, Group-SPECIAL is allowed.

t) If both items in (s) are true there is NOFINDING

u) If either item in (s) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Review all USERIDs with the SPECIAL attribute. Ensure documentation providing justification for access is maintained and filed with the IAO, and that unjustified access is removed.

For the SYSTEM SPECIAL attribute:

A sample command for removing the SPECIAL attribute is shown here: ALU <useridNOSPECIAL.

For the GROUP SPECIAL attribute:

CO <user> GROUP(<groupname>) NOSPECIAL

CCI: CCI-000035

Group ID (Vulid): V-98135

Group Title: ES000670

Rule ID: SV-107239r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000670](#)

Rule Title: Assignment of the RACF OPERATIONS attribute to individual userids is not fully justified.

Vulnerability Discussion: A user possessing the OPERATIONS attribute has authorization to do maintenance operations on all RACF-protected data sets, tape volumes, and DASD volumes except those where the access list specifically limits the OPERATIONS user to a lower access authority than the operation requires.

Because the OPERATIONS and GROUP-OPERATIONS privileges allow widespread access they should be limited to users documented with a valid requirement. Delegation of GROUP-OPERATIONS processing to other personnel by site-defined Group Administrators is forbidden.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

Display User ID Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select User Profile, option 1,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the User Reports screen, select User Summary, option 1,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter Y next to the

Operations prompt

- h) Press ENTER
- i) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- j) Press ENTER
- k) Return to the Security Server Reports menu, select Connect Reports, option 15) Press ENTER
- m) On the Connect Reports screen, select Connect Summary, option 1
- n) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- o) Tab down to the Masking Fields area of the screen and enter Y next to the Operations prompt. p) Press ENTER
- q) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- r) Press ENTER
- s) Review User Summary and Connect Summary report output and ensure that the following items are in effect regarding the OPERATIONS and GROUPOPERATIONS attributes:

1. Authorization to the OPERATIONS or GROUP-OPERATIONS attribute is restricted to key systems personnel, such as individuals responsible for continuing operations and emergency recovery.

2. At minimum, ensure that any users connected to sensitive system dataset HLQ groups with the Group-OPERATIONS are key systems personnel, such as individuals responsible for continuing operations, Storage Management, and emergency recovery. Otherwise, GroupOPERATIONS is allowed.

NOTE: For sites running below RACF 2.1, the OPERATIONS attribute may be granted to STCs that do not require full TRUSTED status.

t) 2. If both items in (s) are true there is NOFINDING

u) If either item in (s) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Review all USERIDs with the OPERATIONS attribute. Ensure documentation providing justification for access is maintained and filed with the IAO, and that unjustified access is removed.

A sample command to remove the OPERATIONS attribute from a userid is shown here:

ALU <userid>NOOPERATIONS

To remove the Group-Operations attribute:

CO <user> GROUP(<groupname>) NOOPERATIONS

CCI: CCI-002262

Group ID (Vulid): V-98137

Group Title: ES000680

Rule ID: SV-107241r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000680](#)

Rule Title: The system programmer will ensure that the CONSOLxx members are properly configured.

Vulnerability Discussion: MCS consoles can be used to issue operator commands. Failure to properly control access to MCS consoles could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive operator commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following items in SRR REVIEW PROCEDURES, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 1 of 2):

* Item 2

a) Display PARMLIB information as follows:

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 3
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option L - Parmlib Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Press ENTER again
6. On the next screen, look for entry CONSOLxx under the first LOADxx entry
7. Enter V next to CONSOLxx to view details
8. Press ENTER
9. Either save the information to another dataset or print the dataset directly.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect:

1. The CONSOLE statement for each console specifies AUTH(INFO).

NOTE: (a) The AUTH parameter is not valid for consoles defined with UNIT(PRT). (b) Specifying AUTH(MASTER) is permissible for the system console.

2. The CONSOLE statement for each console assigns a unique name using

the NAME parameter.

3. The DEFAULT statement for each CONSOLxx member specifies LOGON(REQUIRED) or LOGON(AUTO).

c) If all of the above in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The Systems programmer should use the following recommendations and techniques to provide protection for MCS consoles:

Ensure that the DEFAULT statement specifies LOGON(REQUIRED) so that all operators are required to log on prior to entering z/OS system commands. At the discretion of the IAO, LOGON(AUTO) may be used.

Ensure that each CONSOLE statement specifies an explicit console NAME. And that AUTH(INFO) is specified, this also including extended MCS consoles. AUTH(MASTER) may be specified for systems console.

CCI: CCI-000382

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98139

Group Title: ES000690

Rule ID: SV-107243r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000690](#)

Rule Title: MCS console userid(s) will be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: MCS consoles can be used to issue operator commands. Failure to properly control access to MCS consoles could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive operator commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Display CONSOLE userid information as follows:

a) From Analyzer main Menu

1. Go to option 3
2. Press ENTER
3. Select option L - Parmlib Analysis
4. Press ENTER
5. Press ENTER again
6. On the next screen, look for entry CONSOLxx under the first LOADxx entry
7. Enter V next to CONSOLxx to view details
8. Press ENTER
9. Either save the information to another dataset or print the dataset directly.
10. Locate all console definitions by searching for NAME and noting each defined console name.

b) In Administrator

1. Select option 3 on the main menu
2. Press ENTER
3. Select User, option 1
4. Press ENTER
5. Select User Summary report, option 1
6. Select the Batch option by changing the Batch/Online option to a B
7. Select the Enhanced Masking option, enter Y
8. On the Enhanced Masking panel, enter the following string:

Userid = console1 or Userid = console2 or Userid = console3 ..

9. Press ENTER
10. Select S on the JCL Submit Processing
11. Press ENTER
12. Review report output and ensure the following items are in effect:
 - a. Each console defined in the CONSOLxx parmli members is associated with a valid RACF userid.

- b. Ensure that RACF console userids are defined as follows:
1. No special attributes (e.g., SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, etc.). If this is true there is NO FINDING.
 2. The RACF default group is the appropriate console group profile. If this is true, there is NO FINDING.

c) In Administrator

1. Select option 3 on the main menu
2. Press ENTER
3. Select ID In Access List, option 17
4. Press ENTER
5. Enter U for ID Type and Console Userid for the ID field
6. Select the Batch option by changing the Batch/Online option to a B
7. Leave the Masking Fields of Profile and Class with an * in them. All profiles and classes will need to be searched for access.
8. Set the UACC and * flags to Y, at the bottom of the screen
9. Press ENTER
10. Review report output and ensure the following item is in effect:
 - a. Restricted from accessing all data sets and resources except MCS.MCSOPER.consolename in the OPERCMDS resource class and consolename in the CONSOLE resource class. If this is true, there is NO FINDING.

Note: Repeat steps (5) thru (10) for each console userid.

d) In Administrator

1. Select option 3 on the main menu
2. Press ENTER
3. Select User, option 1
4. Press ENTER
5. Select User Summary report, option 1
6. Select the Enhanced Masking option, enter Y
7. On the Enhanced Masking panel, enter the following string:

Userid = console1 or Userid = console2 or Userid = console3 ..

8. Press ENTER
9. Enter the BRB line command next to the first userid listed on the report and on the last userid listed on the report
10. Press ENTER
11. Save command output to a dataset or PDS for future reference; review generated RACF commands and ensure console userids have no accesses to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc); if this is true, there is NO FINDING

e) If all of the above in (b.12), (c.10) and (d.11) are true, there is NO FINDING.

f) If any of the above in (b.12), (c.10) and (d.11) are not true, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that all consoles identified in the currently active CONSOLxx parmlib member in EXAM.RPT(PARMLIB) are defined to the ACP.

Review the MCS console resources defined to z/OS and the ACP, and ensure they conform to those outlined below.

Each console defined in the currently active CONSOLxx parmlib member in EXAM.RPT(PARMLIB) is associated with a valid RACF userid.

Each console userid has no special privileges and/or attributes (e.g., SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, etc.).

Each console userid has no accesses to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.).

Each console userid will be restricted from accessing all data sets and resources except MVS.MCSOPER.consolenam in the OPERCMDS resource class and consolenam in the CONSOLE resource class.

Each console userid has the RACF default group that is an appropriate console group profile.

NOTE: If LOGON(AUTO) is specified in the currently active CONSOLxx parmlib member, additional access may be required. Permissions for the console userids and/or console group may be given with access READ to MVS.CONTROL, MVS.DISPLAY, MVS.MONITOR, and MVS.STOPMN OPERCMDS resource.

NOTE: Execute the JCL in CNTL(IRRUT100) using the RACF console userids as SYSIN input. This report lists all occurrences of these userids within the RACF database, including data set and resource access lists.

Examples:

AG consautolog SUPGROUP(<syspau>) OWNER(<syspau>) -
DATA(' group for console userids for autolog processing ')

AG consnoautolog SUPGROUP(<syspau>) OWNER(<syspau>)
DATA('group for console userids for no autolog processing')

AU consname NAME('CONSOLE USERID FOR consname') NOPASSWORD NOOIDCARD
DFLTGRP(consautolog) OWNER(consautolog) -
DATA('ADDED TO SUPPORT THE CHANGE TO LOGON(AUTO) IN CONSOLXX')

PERMIT MVS.CONTROL.** CL(OPERCMDS) ID(consautolog) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT MVS.DISPLAY.** CL(OPERCMDS) ID(consautolog) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT MVS.MONITOR.** CL(OPERCMDS) ID(consautolog) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT MVS.STOPMN.** CL(OPERCMDS) ID(consautolog) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT consname CL(CONSOLE) ID(consname)

CCI: CCI-000382

CCI: CCI-002232

Group ID (Vulid): V-98141

Group Title: ES000700

Rule ID: SV-107245r2_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000700](#)

Rule Title: RACF users do not have the required default fields.

Vulnerability Discussion: Ensure that Every USERID is uniquely identified to the system. Within the USERID record, the user's name, default group, the owner, and the user's passdate fields are completed. This will uniquely identify each user. If these fields are not completed for each user, user accountability will become lost.

Every user will be identified to RACF via each user s unique userid profile. To RACF, a user is an individual (user), a started task, or a batch job. Every userid will be fully identified within RACF with the following fields completed:

NAME User s name

DFLTGRP Default group

OWNER User s profile owner

PASSWORD Password

RACF will automatically assign the default group as the password if a password is not explicitly coded. Assign a unique password to every userid to prevent unauthorized access by a person who knows the default group for a new userid.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display User ID Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Reports.
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select User Profile, option 1,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the User Reports screen, select User Summary, option 1,
- f) Tab down to the Batch/Online field, type a B (for batch)
- g) Press ENTER
- h) On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
- i) Review User Summary report output and ensure that the following items are in effect for all users including batch userids:
 1. A completed NAME field that can either be traced back to a current DD2875 or a Vendor Requirement (example: A Started Task).
 2. The presence of the DEFAULT-GROUP and OWNER fields.
 3. The PASSDATE field is not set to N/A unless this user has the PROTECTED attribute
- j) If (i) any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review all USERID definitions to ensure required information is provided. Evaluate the impact of correcting the deficiency. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes listed in this PDI. The following are sample commands to correct this vulnerability:

1. Add a NAME to a userid with the command `ALU <userid> NAME('lastname, firstname')`.
2. Every user will be assigned a default group by default. A sample command to reassign a default group is shown here: `ALU <userid> DFLTGRP(<newdefaultgroup>)`. You must first be connected to a group via the `RACF CONNECT` command before making it a default group.
3. A PASSDATE field showing 00.000 indicates that a temporary password has been assigned but the user has not logged in and set a permanent password. This could indicate that a new userid was recently added or that a userid previously added is unused and should be considered for deletion. The IAO should investigate and determine if the userid should be deleted or that the new user should be contacted and told to login to set a permanent password.

CCI: CCI-000764

CCI: CCI-000804

Group ID (Vulid): V-98143

Group Title: ES000710

Rule ID: SV-107247r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000710](#)

Rule Title: Interactive USERIDs defined to RACF must have the required fields completed.

Vulnerability Discussion: Improper assignments of attributes in the LOGONID record may allow users excessive privileges resulting in unauthorized access.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Note: Current DoD policy has changed requiring that the password change interval be at the most 60 days. Ensure that this is in effect.

Note: FTP only process and server to server userids may have PASSWORD(NOINTERVAL) specified. These users must be identified in the FTPUSERS group in the Dialog Process or FTP in the name field. Additionally these users must change their passwords on an annual basis.

- a) Ensure that PASS-INTERVAL is a value of 1 to 60 days.
 1. From the Vanguard Administrator main menu enter 2;5 to enter Vanguard RACF Commands panel.
 2. Scroll to the area marked Password Options and verify that interval is set between 1 to 60 days inclusive.
 3. From the Vanguard Administrator main menu enter 3;1 to enter the User Reports panel.
 4. Enter Y in the enhanced masking field of this panel and press enter.
 5. On the enhanced command line enter PWDINTERVAL GE 61 and press enter.
6. If any list results this is a FINDING. Indicates these user ids do not have a password interval set from 1 to 60.
- b) Ensure that the following items are in effect for Interactive users (non-batch only or STC protected users):
 1. No userid has the LAST-ACCESS field set to UNKNOWN.
 - a. From the Vanguard Administrator main menu enter 3;1.
 - b. Press enter at the User Summary panel to list all RACF defined user ids.
 - c. From the resulting display enter sort racinit on the command line and press enter. The display will be sorted in descending order.
 - c) If a(6) list is blank, there is NO FINDING.
 - d) If a(6) list is not blank, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will review all interactive USERID definitions to ensure required information is provided.

Evaluate the impact of correcting any deficiencies. Develop a plan of action and implement the required changes.

The PASSWORD-INTERVAL for an interactive user must be set no higher than 60 days.

Note: Current DoD policy has changed requiring that the password change interval is set to a value of 1 to 60. Ensure that this is in effect.

Note: FTP only process and server to server userids may have PASSWORD(NOINTERVAL) specified. These users must be identified in the FTPUSERS group in the Dialog Process or FTP in the name field. Additionally, these users must change their passwords on an annual basis or less.

A sample command to accomplish this is shown here:

PW USER(<userid>) INTERVAL(60).

The LAST-ACCESS date must be set to a valid date and not to the value UNKNOWN. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here:

ALU <userid> RESUME

CCI: CCI-000199

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98145 Group

Title: ES000720

Rule ID: SV-288r2_ruSV-1072le

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000720](#)

Rule Title: Started Tasks are not properly identified to RACF.

Vulnerability Discussion: Started procedures have system generated job statements that do not contain the user, group, or password statements. To enable the started procedure to access the same protected resources that users and groups access, started procedures must have an associated USERID. If a USERID is not associated with the started procedure, the started procedure will not have access to the resources.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following items found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 1 of 2):

* Item 2

a) Display STARTED class information as follows:

1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
 2. Press ENTER
 3. Select option 4 - Started Procedures Analysis
 4. Press ENTER
 5. On the next screen, keep YES for Sort Criteria
 6. Press ENTER
 7. On the Sort Selection screen, enter a 1 next to the USERID field name This will list Started Procedure information in Userid order.
 8. Press ENTER
 9. On the JCL Submit Processing panel, select S to submit the job
- b) Review Started Procedures Analysis Report output looking for userids associated with multiple started procedures as well as started procedure names containing an * in the Procname, which indicates there might be multiple Started procedures sharing this userid.

NOTE: For Vendor Products, STC userids are allowed to be unique per product and function if supported by vendor documentation.

c) If all started task procedures have a unique associated userid, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any started task procedure does not have a unique associated userid, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Define a RACF STARTED Class profile for each Started Proc that maps the proc to a unique userid, or STC userids will be unique per product and function if supported by vendor documentation. This can be accomplished with the sample command:

```
RDEF STARTED <procname>.* UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) STDATA(USER  
(<userid>) GROUP(<groupname>) TRACE(YES))
```

A corresponding USERID must be defined with appropriate authority. The "groupname" should be a valid STC group with no interactive users.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98147

Group Title: ES000730

Rule ID: SV-107251r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000730](#)

Rule Title: Started Tasks are improperly defined to RACF.

Vulnerability Discussion: Started procedures have system generated job statements that do not contain the user, group, or password statements. To enable the started procedure to access the same protected resources that users and groups access, started procedures must have an associated USERID. If a USERID is not associated with the started procedure, the started procedure will not have access to the resources. If the started procedure is associated with an incorrect user or a user with higher than necessary authority then a potential vulnerability exists.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Refer to the following items in found in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc, Preliminary Worksheet (Part 1 of 2):

* Item 2

I. STC Group ID s

Display STARTED class information as follows:

a) Refer to Started Procedures Analysis report in RACF0620.

b) Review Started Procedures Analysis Report output looking for finding messages related to
Group ID not defined to RACF or Userid not connected to Group or UserID not defined to RACF .

1. If none of the above is true, there is NO FINDING.

2. If any of the above is true, this is a FINDING.

c) Generate Profile Segments Report

1. In Administrator, select option 3 on the main menu

2. Press ENTER

3. Select Profile Segment reports, option 5

4. Press ENTER

5. Select STDATA report, option 41

6. Press ENTER

7. Select the online option by changing the Batch/Online option to an O.

8. Select the Enhanced Masking function, enter the following criteria

GROUP NE spaces

9. Press ENTER

10. Run the STDATA report

11. Sort display data on GROUP by entering the command SORT GROUP on the command prompt.

12. Enter QG on the Command line
13. Press ENTER
14. On the QG edit panel, enter the following pattern:

```
REPORT(CONNECT SUMMARY)
GROUP(&GROUPID)
REPORT(END)
```

15. Invoke the GEN command,
16. Press ENTER
17. Delete duplicate group entries from generated Output.
18. Save data to a sequential dataset or PDS.
19. Return to Security Server Reports main menu by pressing PF3
20. Select Connect Reports option 15
21. Press ENTER
22. Select the Batch Option
23. Press ENTER
24. Select E on the JCL Submit Processing
25. Update the SYSIN JCL statement as follows:

```
//SYSIN DD DSN=YOUR.DATASET.NAME.FROM.QG.HERE,
DISP=SHR
```

26. Submit report job by entering SUB on the command line

- d) Review report output searching for Userids connected to selected STC groups which are not STC userids.
- e) If there are no userids connected to STC groups which are not STC userids, there is NO FINDING.
- f) If there are userids connected to STC group which are not STC userids, this is a FINDING.
- g) If items (b.1) and (e) are true then there is NO FINDING
- h) If either (b.2) or (f) is true then there is a FINDING

II. STC Default Profile

Display STARTED class information as follows:

- a) Refer to Started Procedures Analysis report in RACF0620.
- b) Review Started Procedures Analysis Report output looking for a Procname of **, this should be at the top of the report list, there should be one present. If there is no ** Procname, this is a finding; otherwise, note the GroupID associated with the ** Procname entry.
- c) Generate Access Report
 1. In Administrator, select option 3 on the main menu

2. Press ENTER
 3. Select ID In Access report, option 17
 4. Enter G on the ID Type prompt
 5. Enter Groupid associated with the ** Procname entry
 6. Select the Batch option by changing the Batch/Online option to a B
 7. Press ENTER
 8. Select S on the JCL Submit Processing
- d) Review report output searching for any access granted to explicit data set or resources. There should not be any.

- e) If both (b) and (d) are true, NO FINDING.
- f) If either (b) or (d) is true, this is a FINDING.

III. ICHRIN03 Entries

Display STARTED class information as follows:

- a) Generate Started Procedures Analysis Report
 - 1. From Analyzer main Menu, go to option 4
 - 2. Press ENTER
 - 3. Select option 4 - Started Procedures Analysis
 - 4. Press ENTER
 - 5. On the next screen, keep YES for Sort Criteria
 - 6. Press ENTER
 - 7. On the Sort Selection screen, enter a 1 next to the SOURCE field name. This will list Started Procedure information in Source order.
 - 8. Press ENTER
 - 9. On the JCL Submit Processing panel, select S to submit the job
- b) Review Started Procedures Analysis Report output searching for Procname entries showing ICHRIN03 under the Source field heading. Critical Started Tasks should be supported by an ICHRIN03 entry.
- c) If (b) is true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If (b) is not true, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review all STCs for compliance to Sections I, II, and III.

Corrections can be made as follows. Note that the commands listed below are samples.

Section I

- 1. Connect a STC userid to a STC group. Sample command: CO <stcuser> GROUP(<stcgroup>) OWNER(<stcgroup>)
- 2. If any non-STC userids are connected to a STC group, then should be removed. Sample command: RE <nonstcuser> GROUP(<stcgroup>)
- 3. Set up STC userids with the PROTECTED attribute. Sample command: ALU <stcuserNOPASSWORD NOOIDCARD

Section II

- 1. Define a generic catch all profile. Sample command: RDEF STARTED ** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) STDATA(USER(STCDFLT) GROUP(#STCDFLT) TRACE(YES))
- 2. Run IRRUT100 against the group specified in the STARTED class ** profile. Remove this group from any access lists. Sample command: PE <profile> CL(<classname>) ID(<#STCDFLT or altername group name>)

DEL. 3. Set up the userid as Restricted with the command: ALU <stdflt> RESTRICTED. Remove from any and all access lists using the same steps as found in the previous item.

Section III

The IBM zOS Security Server RACF library documents procedures for updating ICHRIN03 (The RACF Started Procedures Table). With each SSOPAC release, the SSO includes a ICHRIN03 table that contains entries necessary for system recovery: JES2, VTAM, TSO, and the RACF subsystem.

Evaluate the impact of the change and develop a plan of action to implement the changes as required.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98149

Group Title: ES000740

Rule ID: SV-107253r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000740](#)

Rule Title: The Automatic Data Set Protection (ADSP) SETROPTS value is not set to NOADSP.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0250: CAT II) ADSP indicates that RACF automatically creates discrete data set profiles to protect datasets created by users having this attribute.

ADSP specifies that data sets created by users who have the ADSP attribute will be RACF protected automatically. NOADSP cancels automatic RACF protection for users who have ADSP.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Display Resource Class Information as follows:

- a) From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
- b) Press ENTER
- c) Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
- d) Press ENTER
- e) On the SETROPTS screen, locate the Dataset Options heading by using the PF8 key to scroll down the screen display
- f) Screen print the display showing the ADSP attributes under the Dataset Options heading, located on the right hand side of the screen. 1. If the ADSP value shows as N , there is NOFINDING
2. If the ADSP value shows as Y , this is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that ADSP SETROPTS value is set to NOADSP.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

NOADSP is set with the command SETR NOADSP.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98151

Group Title: ES000750

Rule ID: SV-107255r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000750](#)

Rule Title: User accounts defined to the ACP do not uniquely identify system users.

Vulnerability Discussion: System users must be uniquely identified to the operating system. To accomplish this, each user must have an individual account defined to the ACP. If user accounts are not associated with specific individuals and are shared among multiple users, individual accountability is lost. This could hamper security audit activities and lead to unauthorized user access of system resources and customer data.

. Scope of, ownership of and responsibility over users shall be based upon the specifics of appointment, role, responsibilities and level of authority. Such as a domain/system level IAO is responsible for the Domain/system level users, whereas normally a application user would be the responsibility of the DoD AIS application security team unless SLA indicates otherwise.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, IAIA-1, IAIA-2

Check Content:

The IAO will provide a list of all userids that are shared among multiple users(i.e not uniquely identified system users).

b) If there are no shared userids on this domain, there is NO FINDING.

c) If there are shared userids on this domain, this is a FINDING.

NOTE: Userids should be able to be traced back to a current DD2875 or a Vendor Requirement (example: A Started Task).

Fix Text: The IAO wil identify user accounts defined to the ACP that are being shared among multiple users. This may require interviews with appropriate system-level support personnel. Remove the shared user accounts from the ACP.

The IAO is required to uniquely identify each system user to the ACP, and that access to resources is limited to those needed to perform the function. A user is defined as either an individual accessing a computer resource, or as a task executing on the system that requires access to a resource. On z/OS systems a user is identified by means of a unique userid. Security requires that audit data record the identity of the user, time of access, interaction with the system, and sensitive functions that might permit a user or program to modify, bypass, or negate security safeguards.

Any userid (user) on the system must be associated with only one individual also any given individual may be assigned responsibility for multiple userids on a given system, depending on functional responsibilities, to ensure task segregation.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98153

Group Title: ES000760

Rule ID: SV-107257r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000760](#)

Rule Title: The INACTIVE SETROPTS value is not set to 35 days.

Vulnerability Discussion: The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, IAAC-1

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the UserID Options area and locate the INACTIVE field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the INACTIVE attribute.

1. If the INACTIVE value is between 1 and 35, there is NO FINDING
2. If the INACTIVE value is 0 or greater than 35, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that INACTIVE SETROPTS value is set to a value of 1 to 35 days, this specifies the number of days that a user is inactive and still remain valid. INACTIVE specifies the number of days that a USERID can remain unused and still be considered valid.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a status of INACTIVE.

The INACTIVE value is set properly with the command:

SETR INACTIVE(35)

CCI: CCI-000017

Group ID (Vulid): V-98155

Group Title: ES000770

Rule ID: SV-107259r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000770](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(RULEn) SETROPTS value(s) must be properly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: Password complexity, or strength, is a measure of the effectiveness of a password in resisting guessing and brute-force attacks. Password complexity is one factor of several that determine how long it takes to crack a password. The more complex the password is, the greater the number of possible combinations that need to be tested before the password is compromised. Use of a complex password helps to increase the time and resources required to compromise the password.

The PASSWORD SETROPTS value(s) specify the rules that RACF will apply when a user selects a new password. Improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can result in weakened passwords and compromise the security of the processing environment.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the RULE field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.
6. Enter E next to the Rule field prompt to display Rule definitions.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the PASSWORD(RULEn) attribute.

1. If the PASSWORD(RULEn) value conforms to at least one of the following:

RULE 1 LENGTH(8) \$mmmmmmm

RULE 2 LENGTH(8) m\$mmmmmm

RULE 3 LENGTH(8) mm\$mmmmmm

RULE 4 LENGTH(8) mmm\$mmmm

RULE 5 LENGTH(8) mmmm\$mmm

RULE 6 LENGTH(8) mmmmm\$mm

RULE 7 LENGTH(8) mmmmmmm\$m

RULE 8 LENGTH(8) mmmmmmmmm\$

there is NO FINDING

2. If the PASSWORD(RULEn) value does not conform to at least one of the above rules, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The ISSO will evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

For z/OS release 1.13 and 1.14 PTF UA90720 must be applied.

For z/OS Release 2.1 PTF UA90721 must be applied.

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD SYNTAX RULEs.

Setting the password syntax to all Mixed Case Alphanumeric and Special Characters is activated with the commands:

```
setr password(mixedcase) setr  
password(specialchars) setr  
password(rule1(length(8) mixedall(1:8))
```

CCI: CCI-000192

CCI: CCI-000193

CCI: CCI-000194

CCI: CCI-000195

CCI: CCI-000205

CCI: CCI-001619

Group ID (Vulid): V-98157

Group Title: ES000780

Rule ID: SV-107261r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000780](#)

Rule Title: RACF exit ICHPWX01 must be installed and properly configured.

Vulnerability Discussion: Password complexity, or strength, is a measure of the effectiveness of a password in resisting guessing and brute-force attacks. Password complexity is one factor of several that determine how long it takes to crack a password. The more complex the password is, the greater the number of possible combinations that need to be tested before the password is compromised. Use of a complex password helps to increase the time and resources required to compromise the password.

The RACF exit ICHPWX01 will allow for additional checks not available in RACF SETROPTS whenever a user selects a new password. Improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can result in weakened passwords and compromise the security of the processing environment.

Responsibility: N/A

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

(assures that at least 1 upper 1 lower 1 number and 1 special character is used in Password)

The user's name cannot be contained in the password

Only 3 consecutive characters of the user's name are allowed

The minimum word length checked is 8

The user ID cannot be contained in the password

Only 3 consecutive characters of the user ID are allowed

Only 3 unchanged positions of the current password are allowed

These positions need to be consecutive to cause a failure

This check is not case sensitive

No more than 0 pairs of repeating characters are allowed

This check is not case sensitive

A minimum list of 33 restricted prefix strings is being checked:

APPL APR AUG ASDF BASIC CADAM DEC DEMO FEB FOCUS GAME IBM JAN JUL
JUN LOG MAR MAY NET NEW NOV OCT PASS ROS SEP SIGN SYS TEST TSO
VALID VTAM XXX 1234

If the modify command fails or returns the following message in the system log, this is a finding.

IRX0406E REXX exec load file REXXLIB does not contain exec member IRRPWREX.

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

For z/OS release 1.12 through z/OS release 2.1 APARs OA43998 and OA43999 must be applied.

Install exit IRRPWREX according to instructions in z/OS Security Server RACF System Programmer's Guide.

Note: RACF exit ICHPWX01 is coded to call a System REXX named IRRPWREX, so the name cannot be changed without a corresponding change to ICHPWX01.

System REXX requires that this exec (IRRPWREX) reside in the REXXLIB concatenation.

Update parameters in IRRPWREX according to table Parameters for RACF IRRPWREX in the z/OS STIG Addendum.

CCI: CCI-000192

CCI: CCI-000193

CCI: CCI-000194

CCI: CCI-000195

CCI: CCI-000205

CCI: CCI-001619

Group ID (Vulid): V-98159

Group Title: ES000790

Rule ID: SV-107263r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000790](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(MINCHANGE) value will specified a value greater the zero (0).

Vulnerability Discussion: MINCHANGE specifies the number of days that must pass between a user s password and password phrase changes. Users can not change their own passwords and password phrases within the minimum change interval.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display the Password Minimum Change Interval Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands, option 2.
2. Press Enter
3. From the VRC main menu, select SETROPTS option 5
- 4.. Press Enter
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the MIN INTERVAL field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen

b) If the PASSWORD(MIN INTERVAL) greater than 0 and less than or equal to 59, there is NO FINDING

c) If the PASSWORD(MIN INTERVAL) value is 0 or greater than 59, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(MINCHANGE) SETROPTS value number from 1 to 59. This specifies the number of days that must pass before a user can change their password.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD MINCHANGE. Use the following command as an example command:

SETROPTS PASSWORD(MINCHANGE(1))

CCI: CCI-000198

Group ID (Vulid): V-98161

Group Title: ES000800

Rule ID: SV-107265r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000800](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(INTERVAL) SETROPTS value is not set to 60 days.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0440: CAT II) INTERVAL specifies the maximum number of days that each users password is valid. When a user logs on to the system, RACF compares the system password interval value specified in the user profile. RACF uses the lower of the two values to determine if the users password has expired.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the INTERVAL field prompt, on the right hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the PASSWORD(INTERVAL) attribute.

1. If the PASSWORD(INTERVAL) value is less than or equal to 60 and not 0, there is NO FINDING
2. If the PASSWORD(INTERVAL) value is 0 or greater than 60, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(INTERVAL) SETROPTS value is set to 60 days. This specifies the maximum number of days that each user s password is valid.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD INTERVAL.

(1) Setting the password interval to 60 days is activated with the command SETR
PASSWORD(INTERVAL(60)).

CCI: CCI-000199

Group ID (Vulid): V-98163

Group Title: ES000810

Rule ID: SV-107267r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000810](#)

Rule Title: The PASSWORD(HISTORY) SETROPTS value is not set to 10.

Vulnerability Discussion: (RACF0430: CAT II) HISTORY specifies the number of previous passwords that RACF saves for each USERID and compares with an intended new password. If there is a match with one of the previous passwords, or with the current password, RACF rejects the intended new password.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, scroll down to the Password Options area and locate the HISTORY field prompt, on the left hand side of the screen.

b) Screen print he display showing the value of the PASSWORD(HISTORY) attribute.

1. If the PASSWORD(HISTORY) value is 10 or greater, there is NO FINDING
2. If the PASSWORD(HISTORY) value is not at least 10, this is a FINDING

c) If Item (b.1) is true then there is NO FINDING

d) If Item (b.2) is true then there is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that PASSWORD(HISTORY) SETROPTS value is set to 10. This specifies the number of previous passwords that RACF saves for each USERID and compares with an intended new password. If there is a match with one of the previous passwords, or with the current password, RACF rejects the intended new password.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including PASSWORD HISTORY.

(1) Setting the password history to 10 generations is activated with the command SETR PASSWORD(HISTORY (10)).

CCI: CCI-000200

Group ID (Vulid): V-98165

Group Title: ES000820

Rule ID: SV-107269r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000820](#)

Rule Title: NIST FIPS-validated cryptography must be used to protect passwords in the security database.

Vulnerability Discussion: Use of weak or untested encryption algorithms undermines the purposes of utilizing encryption to protect data. Cryptographic modules must adhere to the higher standards approved by the federal government since this provides assurance they have been tested and validated.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) From the ISPF Command Shell enter

SETRopts List

OR

b) Refer to the following report(s) produced by the RACF Data Collection:

RACFCMDS.RPT(SETROPTS)

or

PDI(RACF0467) (Automated Analysis)

c) If the following is specified under PASSWORD PROCESSING OPTIONS:

THE ACTIVE PASSWORD ENCRYPTION ALGORITHM IS KDFAES, this is not a Finding.

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified below:

For z/OS release 1.12 through z/OS release 2.1 APARs OA43998 and OA43999 must be applied.

Set the passwords option for algorithm to KDFAES.

Sample syntax to activate:

SETRopts PASSWORD(ALGORITHM(KDFAES))

CCI: CCI-002450

Group ID (Vulid): V-98167

Group Title: ES000830

Rule ID: SV-107271r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000830](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS, for PKI-based authentication, must use the ESM to store keys.

Vulnerability Discussion: If the private key is discovered, an attacker can use the key to authenticate as an authorized user and gain access to the network infrastructure.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

From the ISPF Command Shell enter:

OMVS enter find

/ -name *.kdb

If any files are found, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Define all Keys/Certificates to the security database.

Remove the all .kdb files.

CCI: CCI-000186

Group ID (Vulid): V-98169

Group Title: ES000840

Rule ID: SV-107273r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000840](#)

Rule Title: The ERASE ALL SETROPTS value must be set to ERASE(ALL) on all systems.

Vulnerability Discussion: The ERASE ALL specifies that data management is to erase all scratched data sets including temporary data sets. NOERASE specifies that no DASD data sets are erased when deleted.

The system-wide options control the default settings for determining how the ACP will function when handling requests for access to the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data. The ACP provides the ability to set a number of these fields at the subsystem level. If no setting is found, the system-wide defaults will be used. The improper setting of any of these fields, individually or in combination with another, can compromise the security of the processing environment. In addition, failure to establish standardized settings for the ACP control options introduces the possibility of exposure during migration process or contingency plan activation.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Display Resource Class Information as follows:.

1. From Administrator main menu, select Security Server Commands,
2. Press ENTER
3. Select SETROPTS option 5 SETROPTS option,
4. Press ENTER
5. On the SETROPTS screen, page down to the Dataset Options data area and locate the ERASE and ERASEALL field prompts.

b) Screen print the display showing the value of the ERASE and ERASEALL attributes.

1. For both CLASSIFIED and CONFIDENTIAL systems, if the ERASE value is set to Y, there is NO FINDING:
2. For UNCLASSIFIED systems, if the ERASE value is set to Y, there is NO FINDING:

c) For Classified and Confidential systems if b.1 is true there is NO FINDING, otherwise FINDING

d) For Unclassified systems if b.2 is true there is NO FINDING, otherwise FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO must ensure that ERASE SETROPTS value is set to ERASE(ALL) this allows DASD datasets to be erased when deleted.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

- Issue the RACF Command SETR LIST to show the status of RACF Controls including the status of the ERASE options.
- Take the appropriate actions to ensure that the SETR ERASE(ALL) has been issued to enable Erase On Scratch for all datasets.

CCI: CCI-001090

Group ID (Vulid): V-98171

Group Title: ES000850

Rule ID: SV-107235r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [ES000850](#)

Rule Title: Maintenance USERIDs are improperly controlled.

Vulnerability Discussion: DASD management USERIDs require access to backup and restore all files, and present a high degree of risk to the environment. These users should be given access to perform necessary functions thru use of the DASDVOL class (for non-SMS volumes) and/or thru STGADMIN profiles in the FACILITY class for SMS managed volumes. Access to individual profiles in the DATASET class should be disallowed. These userids should also set up IAW RACF0595 for batch userids which includes use of the PROTECTED Attribute.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

a) Refer to U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc., Preliminary Worksheet (Part 2 of 2), Item 1: for data required for this check.

* Item 1: All documents and procedures that apply to the following sections and/or

units:

- a. Operations Including system IPL procedures and SMF collection file backup specifics.
- b. Storage Management Including identification of the DASD backup files and all associated storage management userids/LIDs/ACIDs.
- c. Security Management and Tracking
- d. Change Management

b) To display DASDVOL, GDASDVOL, FACILITY Resource Class and Userid Information, use Administrator for the following tasks:

1. Go to the Administrator Main Menu and select Security Server Reports, option 3
2. On the Security Server Reports menu, select General Resource Profile, option 4.
3. On the General Resource reports screen:
 - * Select Access Lists, option 4; and
 - * Tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B to generate a batch job; and
 - * Tab to the Enhanced Masking prompt and enter Y next to it
 - * Press ENTER

Note: You may need to be in extract mode to complete this. Type in extract at the command line, then <ENTER>, then enter the above screen.

4. On the Enhanced Masking panel enter the following masking string:

CLASS = DASDVOL OR CLASS=GDASDVOL

Note: If working with SMS-managed volumes, enter the following masking string instead:

CLASS=DASDVOL OR CLASS=GDASDVOL OR (CLASS=FACILITY
and PROFILE=STG*)

5. Press ENTER
6. On the Processing Options panel, enter Y by the prompt Explode RACF groups in access list after detail line
7. Press ENTER
8. On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
9. Press ENTER
10. Return to the Security Server Reports menu, select User Profile, option 1
11. Press ENTER
12. On the User Reports screen:
 - * Select User Summary, option 1
 - * Tab down to the Batch/Online prompt and enter B to generate batch job
 - * Tab Down to the Operations masking field and overwrite the * with a Y to list select userids with the operations attribute only
 - * Press ENTER

Note: You may need to be in extract mode to complete this. Type in extract at the command line, then <ENTER>, then enter the above screen.

13. On the JCL Submit Processing screen, select S to submit the batch job
14. Press ENTER
15. Check the Access list report:

- a) If batch userids assigned to storage maintenance tasks (e.g., volume backup, data set archive and restore, etc.) are given access to data sets using DASDVOL and/or GDASDVOL profiles, there is NO FINDING.
- b) If working with SMS-managed volume, review access to FACILITY class, STG* profiles instead; if batch userids are given access to datasets using FACILITY class, STG* profiles, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: DASDVOL profiles will not work with SMS-managed volume. FACILITY class profiles must be used instead. If DFSMS/MVS is used to perform DASD maintenance operations, FACILITY class profiles may also be used to authorize storage maintenance operations to non-SMS-managed volumes in lieu of using DASDVOL profiles. Therefore, not all volumes may be defined to the DASDVOL/GDASDVOL resource classes, and not all storage management userids may be represented in the profile access lists.

16. Check the User Summary report. If any storage management userid is given the OPERATIONS attribute to perform DASD maintenance operations, this is a FINDING.
17. If the storage management userid is not defined with the PROTECTED attribute, this is a FINDING
18. If both of the above in (15) , (16) and (17) are true, there is NOFINDING
19. If either of the above in (15), (16) and (17) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of accomplishing the change. Develop a plan of action and implement the change as required.

Ensure that storage management userids do not possess the OPERATIONS attribute. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here: ALU <useridNOOPERATIONS

Ensure that storage management userids possess the PROTECTED attribute. A sample command to accomplish this is shown here: ALU <useridNOPASS NOOIDCARD

Ensure that storage management userids are permitted to the appropriate STGADMIN profiles in the FACILITY class for SMS-managed volumes.

Ensure that storage management userids are permitted to appropriate DASDVOL profiles for non-SMS-managed volumes.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98173

Group Title: FT000010

Rule ID: SV-107277r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000010](#)

Rule Title: SMF recording options for the FTP Server must be configured to write SMF records for all eligible events.

Vulnerability Discussion: The FTP Server can provide audit data in the form of SMF records. The SMF data produced by the FTP Server provides transaction information for both successful and unsuccessful FTP commands. Failure to collect and retain audit data may contribute to the loss of accountability and hamper security audit activities.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IACControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAT-1, ECAT-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the FTP Server FTP.DATA configuration statements are coded according to the settings in the following table

- a) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the Data configuration file specified on the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.
- b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the FTP Data configuration file:
 - 1. The SMF statement is coded with a value of STD.
 - 2. The SMFJES and SMFSQL statements are coded without an additional value.
 - 3. The SMFAPPE, SMFDEL, SMFEXIT, SMFLOGN, SMFREN, SMFRETR, and SMFSTOR statements are not coded or commented out.
- c) If all of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The system programmer will review the configuration statements in the FTP.DATA data set and ensure the SMF options conform to the specifications in the FTP.DATA Configuration Statements below or that they are commented out.

SMF TYPE119

SMFJES TYPE119

SMFSQL TYPE119

SMFAPPE [Not coded or commented out]

SMFDEL [Not coded or commented out]

SMFEXIT [Not coded or commented out]

SMFLOGN [Not coded or commented out]
SMFREN [Not coded or commented out]
SMFRETR [Not coded or commented out]
SMFSTOR [Not coded or commented out]

The FTP Server can provide audit data in the form of SMF records. SMF record type 119, the TCP/IP Statistics record, can be written with the following subtypes:

70 Append
70 Delete and Multiple Delete
72 Invalid Logon Attempt
70 Rename
70 Get (Retrieve) and Multiple Get
70 Put (Store and Store Unique) and Multiple Put

SMF data produced by the FTP Server provides transaction information for both successful and unsuccessful FTP commands. This data may provide valuable information for security audit activities. Type 119 records use a more standard format and provide more information.

CCI: CCI-000130

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98175

Group Title: FT000020

Rule ID: SV-107279r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000020](#)

Rule Title: The permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the FTP Server component will be properly configured.

Vulnerability Discussion: HFS directories and files of the FTP Server provide the configuration and executable properties of this product. Failure to properly secure these objects may lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the FTP Server component are configured according to the settings in the FTP SERVER HFS OBJECT SECURITY SETTINGS (4.4.4.2 a)

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14 review the files listed below.
- b) If the HFS permission bits and user audit bits for each directory and file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in the list below, there is NO FINDING.

HFS file name	Permission Bits	User Audit bits
/usr/sbin/ftpd	1740	fff
/usr/sbin/ftpdns	1755	fff
/usr/sbin/tftpd	0644	faf
/etc/ftp.data	0744	faf
/etc/ftp.banner	0744	faf

NOTES: Some of the files listed above are not used in every configuration. Absence of a file will not be considered a FINDING.

1. The /usr/sbin/ftpd and /usr/sbin/ftpdns objects are symbolic links to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpd and /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpdns respectively. The permission and user audit bits on the targets of the symbolic links must have the required settings.
2. The /etc/ftp.data file may not be the configuration file the server uses. It is necessary to check the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL to determine the actual file.

3. The /etc/ftp.banner file may not be the banner file the server uses. It is necessary to check the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file to determine the actual file. Also, the permission bit setting for this file must be set as indicated in the table above. A more restrictive set of permissions is not permitted.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

```
7 rwx(least restrictive)
6 rw3
-wx
2 -w5
r-x
4 r-1--x
0 --- (most restrictive)
```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

```
f log for failed access attempts a log
for failed and successful access
-no auditing
```

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the HFS directories and files for the FTP Server. Ensure they conform to the specifications in the table below:

FTP Server HFS Object Security Settings

File	Permission Bits	User Audit Bits
/usr/sbin/ftpd	1740	fff
/usr/sbin/ftpdns	1755	fff
/usr/sbin/tftpd	0644	faf
/etc/ftp.data	0744	faf
/etc/ftp.banner	0744	faf

The /usr/sbin/ftpd and /usr/sbin/ftpdns objects are symbolic links to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpd and /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpdns respectively. The permission and user audit bits on the targets of the symbolic links must have the required settings.

The TFTP Server does not perform any user identification or authentication, allowing any client to connect to the TFTP Server. Due to this lack of security, the TFTP Server will not be used. The TFTP Client is not secured from use.

The /etc/ftp.data file may not be the configuration file the server uses. It is necessary to check the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL to determine the actual file.

The /etc/ftp.banner file may not be the banner file the server uses. It is necessary to check the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file to determine the actual file.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7	rwX	(least restrictive)
6	rw3	
	-wX	
2	-w-	
5	r-X	
4	r-l	
	--X	
0	---	(most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a
log for failed and successful access -
no auditing

Some of the files listed above (e.g., /etc/ftp.data) are not used in every configuration. While the absence of a file is generally not a security issue, the existence of a file that has not been properly secured can often be an issue. Therefore, all files that do exist should have the specified permission and audit bit settings.

The following commands can be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```
chmod 1740 /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpd
chaudit rwx=f /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpd
chmod 1755 /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpdns
chaudit rwx=f
/usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/ftpdns chmod 0744
/etc/ftp.data chaudit w=sf,rx+f
/etc/ftp.data chmod 0744
/etc/ftp.banner chaudit w=sf,rx+f
/etc/ftp.banner
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98177

Group Title: FT000030

Rule ID: SV-107281r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000030](#)

Rule Title: MVS data sets for the FTP Server are not properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: MVS data sets of the FTP Server provide the configuration and operational characteristics of this product. Failure to properly secure these data sets may lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of customer data and some system services.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that if present, the data set containing the FTP.DATA configuration file allows read access to all authenticated users and all other access is restricted to systems programming personnel. The IAO will ensure that all write and allocate access to the data set containing the FTP.DATA configuration file is logged. The IAO will ensure that if present, the data set containing the FTP banner file allows read access to all

- a) Locate the SYSFTPD statement in all active FTPD started tasks JCL members executing on the domain..
- b) Using Vanguard Administrator Ensure the following data set controls are in effect for the FTP Server:
 1. Using On-line Access and Authorization option 4 review the profile protecting the dataset identified in (A) UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set containing the FTP Data configuration file is restricted to systems programming personnel.
Document the protecting profile(s)

NOTE: READ access to all authenticated users is permitted.

2. Using AUDIT FLAGS option 3;3;2 review all profiles identified in (1) to ensure UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set containing the FTP Data configuration file is logged.
3. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the banner statement located in the FTP configuration file. Using On-line Access and Authorization option 4 review the profile protecting the dataset identified to ensure UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set containing the FTP banner file is restricted to systems programming personnel.
4. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the banner statement located in the FTP configuration file. Using AUDIT FLAGS

option 3;3;2 review all profiles identified in (1) READ access to the data set containing the FTP banner file is permitted to all authenticated users.

NOTES:

The MVS data sets mentioned above are not used in every configuration.
Absence of a data set will not be considered a FINDING.

The data set containing the FTP Data configuration file is determined by checking the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.

The data set containing the FTP banner file is determined by checking the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file.

c) If all of the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the data set access authorizations defined to the ACP for the FTP.DATA and FTP.BANNER files. Ensure these data sets are protected as follows:

The data set containing the FTP.DATA configuration file allows read access to all authenticated users and all other access is restricted to systems programming personnel.

All write and allocate access to the data set containing the FTP.DATA configuration file is logged.

The data set containing the FTP banner file allows read access to all authenticated users and all other access is restricted to systems programming personnel.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98179

Group Title: FT000040

Rule ID: SV-00000r0_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000040](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS FTP.DATA configuration statements must have a proper BANNER statement with the Standard Mandatory DoD Notice and Consent Banner.

Vulnerability Discussion: Display of a standardized and approved use notification before granting access to the operating system ensures privacy and security notification verbiage used is consistent with applicable federal laws, Executive Orders, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance.

System use notifications are required only for access via logon interfaces with human users and are not required when such human interfaces do not exist.

The banner must be formatted in accordance with applicable DoD policy. Use the following verbiage for operating systems that can accommodate banners of 1300 characters:

"You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

- At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

- Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG-authorized purpose.

- This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

- Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details."

Use the following verbiage for operating systems that have severe limitations on the number of characters that can be displayed in the banner:

"I've read consent to terms in IS user agreem't."

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: SRG-OS-000023-GPOS-00006, SRG-OS-000024-

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that for systems at Z/OS Release 2.10 and above, the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter specifies an HFS file or Z/OS data set that contains the warning logon banner.

- a) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the Data configuration file specified on the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.
- b) Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.
 - At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.
 - Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.
 - This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.
 - Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.
- c) If all the items in (b) above are true, there is NO FINDING.
 - d) If any item in (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Review the file specified by the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter. Ensure the text in this file specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements.

Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or z/OS data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

- At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

- Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

CCI: CCI-000048

CCI: CCI-000050

Group ID (Vulid): V-98181

Group Title: FT000050

Rule ID: SV-107285r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000050](#)

Rule Title: The warning banner for the FTP Server is not specified properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: System use notifications are required only for access via logon interfaces with human users and are not required when such human interfaces do not exist.

The banner must be formatted in accordance with applicable DoD policy. Use the following verbiage for operating systems that can accommodate banners of 1300 characters:

"You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

- At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

- Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG-authorized purpose.

- This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

- Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details."

Use the following verbiage for operating systems that have severe limitations on the number of characters that can be displayed in the banner:

"I've read consent to terms in IS user agreem't."

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECWM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that for systems at Z/OS Release 2.10 and above, the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter specifies an HFS file or Z/OS data set that contains the warning logon banner.

- a) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the Data configuration file specified on the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.
- b) Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

-This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

-Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

c) If all the items in (b) above are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the file specified by the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter. Ensure the text in this file specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements.

Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or z/OS data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no

expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

CCI: CCI-000048

CCI: CCI-001384

CCI: CCI-001385

CCI: CCI-001386

CCI: CCI-001387

CCI: CCI-001388

Group ID (Vulid): V-98183

Group Title: FT000060

Rule ID: SV-107287r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000060](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS warning banner for the FTP server must be properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: System use notifications are required only for access via logon interfaces with human users and are not required when such human interfaces do not exist.

The banner must be formatted in accordance with applicable DoD policy. Use the following verbiage for operating systems that can accommodate banners of 1300 characters:

"You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

- At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

- Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG-authorized purpose.

- This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

- Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details."

Use the following verbiage for operating systems that have severe limitations on the number of characters that can be displayed in the banner:

"I've read consent to terms in IS user agreem't."

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECWM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that for systems at Z/OS Release 2.10 and above, the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter specifies an HFS file or Z/OS data set that contains the warning logon banner.

- a) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the Data configuration file specified on the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.
- b) Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.
 - At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.
 - Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.
 - This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.
 - Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.
- c) If all the items in (b) above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any item in (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Review the file specified by the FTP.DATA BANNER parameter. Ensure the text in this file specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements.

Ensure the BANNER statement in the FTP Data configuration file specifies an HFS file or z/OS data set that contains a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no

expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-001384CCI

CCI: CCI-001385CCI

CCI: CCI-001386CCI

CCI: CCI-001387CCI

CCI: CCI-001384CCI

CCI: CCI-001385CCI

CCI: CCI-001386CCI

CCI: CCI-001387CCI

CCI: CCI-001388

Group ID (Vulid): V-98185

Group Title: FT000070

Rule ID: SV-107289r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000070](#)

Rule Title: FTP.DATA configuration statements for the FTP Server are not specified in accordance with requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: The statements in the FTP.DATA configuration file specify the parameters and values that control the operation of the FTP Server components including the use of anonymous FTP. Several of the parameters must have specific settings to provide a secure configuration. Inappropriate values could result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the FTP Server FTP.DATA configuration statements are coded according to the settings in the OS390 STIG Volume 1 Table 4.4.41.3.a

FTP.DATA CONFIGURATION STATEMENTS

ANONYMOUS_ [Not Coded]

BANNER [An HFS file, e.g., /etc/ftp.banner]

INACTIVE_ [A value between 1 and 900]

UMASK_ 077

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the FTP daemon.

If FTP is inactive, review the procedure libraries defined to JES2 and locate the FTP JCL member. NOTE: the JCL member is typically named FTPD.

b) Locate the SYSFTPD statement in all active FTPD started tasks JCL members executing on the domain.

c) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the FTP daemon s started task configuration identified by the SYSFTPD statement. Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the FTP Data configuration file:

1) The ANONYMOUS statement is not coded (does not exist) or, if it does exist, it is commented out. _____ True _____ False

NOTE: Other statements prefixed with ANONYMOUS may be present. These statements indicate the level of anonymous support and applicable restrictions if anonymous support

is enabled using the ANONYMOUS statement. These other ANONYMOUS-prefixed statements may be ignored.

2) The INACTIVE statement is coded with a value between 1 and 900 (seconds). _____ True
_____ False

NOTES: 900 indicates a session timeout value of 15 minutes.
0 disables the inactivity timer check.

3) The UMASK statement is coded with a value of 077. ____ True ____ False

4) The BANNER statement is coded. _____ True _____ FALSE

d) If any items above are False this is a FINDING for STIG ID IPFTP030

Fix Text: Review the configuration statements in the FTP.DATA file and ensure they conform to the specifications in the

FTP.DATA CONFIGURATION STATEMENTS below:

STATEMENT NOT CODED,
 CODED WITHOUT VALUE,
OR PARAMETER VALUE

ANONYMOUS [Not Coded]

BANNER [An HFS file, e.g., /etc/ftp.banner]

INACTIVE [A value between 1 and 900]

UMASK 077 [See Note 1]

NOTE: If the FTP Server requires a UMASK value less restrictive than 077, requirements should be justified and documented with the IAO.

CCI: CCI-000048

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-001133

Group ID (Vulid): V-98187

Group Title: FT000080

Rule ID: SV-107291r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000080](#)

Rule Title: The TFTP Server program is not properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) Server, known as tftpd, supports file transfer according to the industry standard Trivial File Transfer Protocol. The TFTP Server does not perform any user identification or authentication, allowing any client to connect to the TFTP Server. Due to this lack of security, the TFTP Server will not be used. Failure to restrict the use of the TFTP Server may result in unauthorized access to the host. This exposure may impact the integrity, availability, and privacy of application data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that Userid and password is coded on separate statements to prevent the display of the password in the output file.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource report option 3.4 Mask on class=program

b) Ensure the following program controls are in effect for the TFTP Server:

1. Program resources TFTPDP and EZATDP are defined to the PROGRAM resource class with a UACC(NONE). The library name where these programs are located is hlq.TCPIP.SEZALOAD.

2. No access to the program resources TFTPDP and EZATDP is permitted.

c) If both the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of implementing the following change. Develop a plan of action and implement the change as required.

1) Ensure that the EZATDP program and its alias TFTPDP are defined to RACF, no access is granted, and WARN mode is not enabled. The following commands provide a sample of how this can be accomplished.

```
rdef program tftpd addmem('sys1.tcpip.sezaload'//nopadchk)
data('Reference SRR PDI # IFTP0090') - audit(all(read))
uacc(none) owner(admin)
```

```
rdef program ezatd
addmem('sys1.tcpip.sezaload'//nopadchk)
data('Reference SRR PDI # IFTP0090') -
audit(all(read)) uacc(none) owner(admin)
```


A PROGRAM class refresh will be necessary and can be accomplished with the command:

```
setr when(program) refresh
```

CCI: CCI-001764

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98189

Group Title: FT000090

Rule ID: SV-107293r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000090](#)

Rule Title: User exits for the FTP Server are in use without proper approval or proper documentation.

Vulnerability Discussion: Several user exit points in the FTP Server component are available to permit customization of its operating behavior. These exits can be used to modify functions such as FTP command usage, client connection controls, post processing tasks, and SMF record modifications. Without proper review and adequate documentation of these exit programs, undesirable operations and degraded security may result. This exposure could lead to unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services, or contribute to the loss of accountability and hamper security audit activities.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Manager IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, DCSW-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the FTP Server user exits are not implemented.

a) Refer to the Data configuration file specified on the SYSFTPD DD statement in the FTP started task JCL. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the file(s) allocated by the STEPLIB DD statement in the FTP started task JCL.

1. Refer to the libraries specified in the system Linklist and LPA.
2. Refer to U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc for the information gathered from the IBM Communications Server Worksheet in the Preliminary Information Worksheets.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for FTP Server user exits:

The FTCHKCMD, FTCHKIP, FTCHKJES, FTCHKPWD, FTPSMFEX and FTPOSTPR modules are not located in the FTP daemon s STEPLIB, Linklist, or LPA.

NOTE: The ISPF ISRFIND utility can be used to search the system Linklist and LPA for specific modules.

Ensure that SMFEXIT= is not specified in the FTP DATA configuration file enabling the FTPSMFEX exit.

- c) If both of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If any FTP Server user exits are implemented and the site has written approval from DISA FSO to install and use the exits, there is NO FINDING.
- e) If any FTP Server user exits are implemented and the site has not obtained written approval from FSO to install and use the exits, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the configuration statements in the FTP.DATA file. Review the FTP daemon STEPLIB, system Linklist, and Link Pack Area libraries. If FTP Server exits are enabled or present, and have not been

approved by the site IAM and not securely written and implemented by the site systems programmer, they should not be installed. Verify that non of the following exits are installed unless they have met the requirements listed above:

FTCHKCMD

FTCHKIP

FTCHKJES

FTCHKPWD

FTPOSTPR

FTPSMFEX

CCI: CCI-000382

CCI: CCI-001764

CCI: CCI-001765

Group ID (Vulid): V-98191

Group Title: FT000100

Rule ID: SV-107277r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000100](#)

Rule Title: The FTP Server daemon is not defined with proper security parameters.

Vulnerability Discussion: The FTP Server daemon requires special privileges and access to sensitive resources to provide its system services. Failure to properly define and control the FTP Server daemon could lead to unauthorized access. This exposure may result in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the FTP daemon runs under its own user account. Specifically, it does not share the account defined for the Z/OS UNIX kernel.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the FTP daemon.

Find the FTPD USERID. Document the FTPD ID: _____

b) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the OMVS daemon.

Find the OMVS USERID. The OMVS USER ID is _____

c) Review Vanguard Analyzer RACF Started Procedures Table Analysis option 3; 4

d) There is an entry in the STARTED resources class for FTP daemons ____ True ____
False

e) All of FTPD(s) USERID are FTPD ____ True ____ False

f) The FTPD(S) USERID is not the same as OMVS USERID ____ True ____
False

g) The FTPD(s) USERIDs are defined as a PROTECTED ____ True ____
False ____

h) Review the FTP USERID with Vanguard Administrator User Reports option 3; 1 Mask on
USERID=USERID documented above

1. Type LV on CMD space next to USER ID

2. Insure FTPD(s) userid has the following OMVS Segments attributes:

The UID value is 0 ____ True ____ False

There is a HOME directory / ____ True ____ False

There is a shell program defined /bin/sh _____ True _____ False

i) If any items above are False this is a FINDING for STIG ID IPFTP0010

Fix Text: Evaluate the impact of correcting any deficiencies. Develop a plan of action and implement the required changes.

Ensure the following items are in effect for all MCS consoles:

1. The FTP daemon userid must be FTPD and a matching entry in the STARTED resource class exists enabling the use of the standard userid and an appropriate group.
2. The FTPD userid is defined as a PROTECTED userid.
- 3) The FTPD userid has the following z/OS UNIX attributes: UID(0), HOME directory / , shell program /bin/sh.

Sample commands to accomplish these requirements are shown here:

Add the FTPD userid:

```
AU FTPD NAME('STC, FTP Daemon') NOPASSWORD NOOIDCARD DFLTGRP(STCTCPX) OWNER  
(STCTCPX) OMVS(UID(0) HOME('/') PROGRAM('/bin/sh'))
```

```
RDEF STARTED FTPD.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) STDATA(USER  
(=MEMBER) GROUP(STCTCPX) TRACE(YES))
```

Additional permissions may be required. See SYS1.TCPIP.SEZAINST(EZARACF) or IBM Comm Server: IP Config Guide.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98195

Group Title: FT000120

Rule ID: SV-107279r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [FT000120](#)

Rule Title: The startup parameters for the FTP include the ANONYMOUS, ANONYMOUS=, or INACTIVE keywords. The FTP daemon s started task JCL does not specify the SYSTCPD and SYSFTPD DD statements for configuration files.

Vulnerability Discussion: During initialization, the FTP daemon reads JCL keywords and configuration files to determine values for critical operational parameters. Because system security is impacted by some of these parameter settings, controlling these options through the configuration file only and explicitly specifying the file locations reduces ambiguity, enhances security auditing, and ensures proper operations. Inappropriate values could result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, IAIA-1, IAIA-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the startup parameters for the FTP daemon does not include the ANONYMOUS, ANONYMOUS=, or INACTIVE keywords

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the FTP daemon.

If FTP is inactive, review the procedure libraries defined to JES2 and locate the FTP JCL member. NOTE: The JCL member is typically named FTPD.

Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started tasks.

b) Review the FTP daemon s started task JCL:

1. The SYSTCPD and SYSFTPD DD statements specify the TCP/IP Data and FTP Data configuration files respectively. _____ True _____ False
2. The ANONYMOUS keyword is not coded on the PARM parameter on the EXEC statement. _____ True _____ False
3. The ANONYMOUS=logonid combination is not coded on the PARM parameter on the EXEC statement. _____ True _____ False
4. The INACTIVE keyword is not coded on the PARM parameter on the EXEC statement. _____ True _____ FALSE

The AUTOLOG statement block can be configured to have TCP/IP start the FTP Server. The FTP entry (e.g., FTPD) can include the PARMSTRING parameter to pass parameters to the FTP procedure when started. NOTE: Parameters passed on the PARMSTRING parameter override parameters specified in the FTP procedure

c) Review the AUTOLOG statement block with in the PROFILE DD of the each TCPIP started task JCL. If an FTP entry is configured in the AUTOLOG statement block in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, ensure the following items are in effect:

1. The ANONYMOUS keyword is not coded on the PARMSTRING parameter.
2. The ANONYMOUS=logonid combination is not coded on the PARMSTRING parameter.
3. The INACTIVE keyword is not coded on PARMSTRING parameter.

d) If any items above are False this is a FINDING for STIG ID IFTPP020

Fix Text: Review the FTP daemon s started task JCL. Ensure that the ANONYMOUS and INACTIVE startup parameters are not specified and configuration file names are specified on the appropriate DD statements.

The FTP daemon program can accept parameters in the JCL procedure that is used to start the daemon. The ANONYMOUS and ANONYMOUS= keywords are designed to allow anonymous FTP connections. The INACTIVE keyword is designed to set the timeout value for inactive connections. Control of these options is recommended through the configuration file statements rather than the startup parameters.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the startup parameters for the FTP daemon does not include the ANONYMOUS, ANONYMOUS=, or INACTIVE keywords.

During initialization the FTP daemon searches multiple locations for the TCPIP.DATA and FTP.DATA files according to fixed sequences. In the daemon s started task JCL, Data Definition (DD) statements will be used to specify the locations of the files. The SYSTCPD DD statement identifies the TCPIP.DATA file and the SYSFTPD DD statement identifies the FTP.DATA file.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the FTP daemon s started task JCL specifies the SYSTCPD and SYSFTPD DD statements for configuration files.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98197

Group Title: JS000010

Rule ID: SV-107301r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000010](#)

Rule Title: RJE workstations and NJE nodes are not controlled in accordance with STIG requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 RJE workstations and NJE nodes provide a method of sending and receiving data (e.g., jobs, job output, and commands) from remote locations. Failure to properly identify and control these remote facilities could result in unauthorized sources transmitting data to and from the operating system. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) Review the NJE definitions by searching for NODE (in the member). Note the NAME= parameter for each occurrence.
- c) Review the workstation definitions by searching for RMT (in the member).
- d) From Administrator Main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; press ENTER.
- e) Choose Option 4 General Resource Profile; press Enter.
- f) choose Option1 General Resource Profile Summary; type FACILITY next to class under Standard Masking Fields. Press ENTER.
- g) Review the following resource definitions in the FACILITY resource class:

NJE.*

RJE.*

NJE.nodename

RJE.workstation

NOTE 1: Nodename is the NAME parameter value specified on the NODE statement. Review the JES2 parameters for NJE node definitions

NOTE 2: Workstation is RMTnnnn, where nnnn is the number on the RMT statement. Review the JES2 parameters for RJE workstation definitions

- h) If all JES2 defined NJE nodes and RJE workstations have a profile defined in the FACILITY resource class, there is NO FINDING
- i) If any JES2 defined NJE node or RJE workstation does not have a profile defined in the FACILITY resource class, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Ensure associated USERIDs exist for all RJE/NJE sources and review the authorizations for these remote facilities. Develop a plan of action and implement the changes as required by the OS/390 STIG.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98199

Group Title: JS000020

Rule ID: SV-107303r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000020](#)

Rule Title: JES2 input sources are not controlled in accordance with the proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 input sources provide a variety of channels for job submission. Failure to properly control the use of these input sources could result in unauthorized submission of work into the operating system. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) Review the spool offload receiver definitions by searching for OFF(in the member.
- c) Review the local card reader definitions by searching for RDR(in the member.
- d) Use the list of RJE workstations from ZJES0011 and the list of NJE nodes from ZJES012.
- e) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- f) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- g) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter INTRDR in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- h) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- i) Save the output for use in the INTRDR (internal reader for batch jobs) check.
- j) Using the node list mentioned in step d, on the General Resources Reports panel, enter nodename in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- k) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- l) Save the output for use in the nodename (NJE node) check.
- m) Repeat step j through l for each nodename in the list

- n) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter OFF* in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- o) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- p) Save the output for use in the OFFn.* (spool offload receiver) check.
- q) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter R% % % %.* in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- s) Save the output for use in the Rnnnn (RJE workstation) check.
- t) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter RDR.* in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- u) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- v) Save the output for use in the RDRnn (local card reader) check.
- w) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter STCINRDR in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- x) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- y) Save the output for use in the STCINRDR (internal reader for started tasks jobs) check.
- z) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter TSUINRDR in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- aa) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER bb) Save the output for use in the TSUINRDR (internal reader for TSO logons) check.
- cc) From Administrator main Menu, select option 2 Security Server Commands. Press ENTER dd) From the VRC main menu, select option 5 SETROPTS. Press ENTER
- ee) Under Class Options, enter E after CDT Classes. Press ENTER
- ff) Enter L JESINPUT on the command line. Note if there is a Y under the column labeled ACT. If yes, this indicates the class is active. Print the screen and save it for the class active check.

gg) Review the following resources in the JESINPUT resource class:

- * INTRDR (internal reader for batch jobs) review output from step i.
- * nodename (NJE node) review output from step l.
- * OFFn.* (spool offload receiver) review output from step p.
- * Rnnnn (RJE workstation) review output from step s.
- * RDRnn (local card reader) review output from step v.
- * STCINRDR (internal reader for started tasks) review output from step y.
- * TSUINRDR (internal reader for TSO logons) review output from step bb. NOTE: If any of these are not found, that resource in the JESINPUT resource class does not have to be defined.

hh) Ensure the following items are in effect:

1. The JESINPUT resource class is active (obtained in step ff).
2. The resources mentioned in step gg are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the JESINPUT resource class.
3. UACC(NONE) is specified for all resources.
4. NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for input sources that are permitted to submit jobs for all users. Currently, the Z/OS STIG provides no guidance on which input sources are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, offload, and STC input sources. ii) If all of the items mentioned in (hh) are true, there is NO FINDING. jj) If any of the items mentioned in (hh) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the following resources in the JESINPUT resource class:

INTRDR (internal reader for batch jobs)

nodename (NJE node)

OFFn.* (spool offload receiver)

Rnnnn (RJE workstation)

RDRnn (local card reader)

STCINRDR (internal reader for started tasks)

TSUINRDR (internal reader for TSO logons)

NOTE: If any of the following are not defined within the JES2 parameters, the resource in the JESINPUT resource class does not have to be defined.

NOTE 1: Nodename is the NAME parameter in the NODE statement. Review the JES2 parameters for NJE node definitions by searching for NODE(in the report.

NOTE 2: OFFn, where n is the number of the offload receiver. Review the JES2 parameters for spool offload receiver definitions by searching for OFF(in the report.

NOTE 3: Rnnnn, where nnnn is the number of the remote workstation. Review the JES2 parameters for RJE node definitions by searching for RMT(in the report.

NOTE 4: RDRnn, where nn is the number of the reader. Review the JES2 parameters for reader definitions by searching for RDR(in the report.

c) Ensure the following items are in effect:

- 1) The JESINPUT resource class is active.

2) The resources mentioned in (b) are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the JESINPUT resource class.

3) UACC(NONE) is specified for all resources.

NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for input sources that are permitted to submit jobs for all users. Currently, there is no guidance on which input sources are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, offload, and STC input sources.

Examples:

```
setr classact(jesinput) setr generic(jesinput) rdef jesinput intrdr uacc(none) owner(admin) audit(failures(read)
success(update)) data('Per SRR PDI ZJES0021') pe intrdr cl(jesinput) id(<syspau>) pe intrdr cl(jesinput) id(*)
/* all users */
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001310

Group ID (Vulid): V-98201

Group Title: JS000030

Rule ID: SV-107305r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000030](#)

Rule Title: JES2 input sources must be properly controlled.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 input sources provide a variety of channels for job submission. Failure to properly control the use of these input sources could result in unauthorized submission of work into the operating system. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- b) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- c) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- d) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- e) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- f) Review the output to determine access authorization for resources defined to the JESINPUT resource class.
- g) If access authorization for resources defined to the JESINPUT resource class is restricted to the appropriate personnel, there is NO FINDING.
- h) NOTE: Use common sense during the analysis. For example, access to the offload input sources should be limited to systems personnel (e.g., operations staff). If access authorization for any resource defined to the JESINPUT resource class is inappropriate, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Verify with the ISSO that access authorization for resources defined to the JESINPUT resource class is restricted to the appropriate personnel

Grant read access to authorized users for each of the following input sources:

INTRDR

nodename
OFFn.*
OFFn.JR
OFFn.SR
Rnnnn.RDm
RDRnn
STCINRDR
TSUINRDR and/or TSOINRDR

The resource definition will be generic if all of the resources of the same type have identical access controls (e.g., if all off load receivers are equivalent). The default access will be NONE except for sources that are permitted to submit jobs for all users. Those resources may be defined as either NONE or READ.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98203

Group Title: JS000040

Rule ID: SV-107307r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000040](#)

Rule Title: JES2 output devices are not controlled in accordance with the proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 output devices provide a variety of channels to which output can be processed. Failure to properly control these output devices could result in unauthorized personnel accessing output. This exposure may compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) Review the local printer definitions by searching for PRT(or PRINTER in the member.
- c) Review the local card definitions by searching for PUN(or PUNCH in the member.
- d) Review the remote workstation printer definitions by searching for .PR in the member.
- e) Review the remote workstation punch definitions by searching for .PU in the member.
- f) Use the list of NJE nodes from ZJES012 and the list of offload receivers from ZJES0021.
- g) From Administrator main Menu, select option 9 Analyzer. Press ENTER
- h) From Analyzer main menu, select 4 Batch Reports. Press ENTER
- i) From Batch Reports menu, select F Subsystem Name Table Analysis. Press ENTER
- j) On the Subsystem Name Table Analysis panel, set the value for SORT CRITERIA to YES and other values to NO. Press ENTER
- k) On the SORT SELECTIONS panel, enter 1 next to SEQ. Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- m) Review the output. Note that the first entry in the report is the JES2 subsystem name and is typically JES2. This will be used in step p.

- n) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- o) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- p) In all profile names, replace JES2 with the JES2 subsystem name determined in step m.
- q) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.** in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- s) Save the output for use in the JES2.** (backstop profile) check.
- t) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.OFF%.* in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- u) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- v) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.*, JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST, and JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT (spool offload related) checks.
- w) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.PRT% in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- x) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- y) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.PRTn ((local printer)) checks.
- z) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.PUN% in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- aa) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER bb) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.PUNn (local punch) check.
- cc) Using the node list mentioned in step f, on the General Resources Reports panel, enter nodename in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- dd) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER ee) Save the output for use in the nodename (NJE node) check.

- ff) Repeat step u through w for each nodename in the list
- gg) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.RJE.R% % % .P* in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- hh) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- ii) Save the output for use in the JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm and JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm (remote printer and punch) checks.
- jj) From Administrator main Menu, select option 2 Security Server Commands. Press ENTER
- kk) From the VRC main menu, select option 5 SETROPTS. Press ENTER
- ll) Under Class Options, enter E after CDT Classes. Press ENTER
- mm) Enter L WRITER on the command line. Note if there is a Y under the column labeled ACT. If yes, this indicates the class is active. Print the screen and save it for the class active check.
- nn) Review the following resources in the WRITER resource class where JES2 is the name of the JES2 subsystem:
- * JES2.** (backstop profile) review output from step s.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.* (spool offload transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST (spool offload SYSOUT transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT (spool offload job transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.PRTn (local printer) review output from step q.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.PUNn (local punch) review output from step t.
 - * JES2.NJE.nodename (NJE node) review output from step ee.
 - * JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm (remote printer) review output from step ii.
 - * JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm (remote punch) review output from step ii.
- NOTE: If any of these are not found, that resource in the WRITER resource class does not have to be defined.
- oo) Ensure the following items are in effect:
5. The WRITER resource class is active (obtained in step mm).
 6. The resources mentioned in step nn are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the WRITER resource class.
 7. UACC(NONE) is specified for all resources.
 8. NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for input sources that are permitted to submit jobs for all users. Currently, the Z/OS STIG provides no guidance on which input sources are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, offload, and STC input sources.
- pp) If all of the items mentioned in (oo) are true, there is NO FINDING. qq) If any of the items mentioned in (oo) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: WRITER Resource Definitions

Review the following resources in the WRITER resource class:

JES2.**	(backstop profile)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.*	(spool offload transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST	(spool offload SYSOUT transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT	(spool offload job transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.PRTn	(local printer)
JES2.LOCAL.PUNn	(local punch)
JES2.NJE.nodename	(NJE node)
JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm	(remote printer)
JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm	(remote punch)

NOTE 1: JES2 is typically the name of the JES2 subsystem. Refer to the SUBSYS report and locate the entry with the description of PRIMARY JOB ENTRY SUBSYSTEM. The SUBSYSTEM NAME of this entry is the name of the JES2 subsystem.

NOTE 2: OFFn, where n is the number of the offload transmitter. Determine the numbers by searching for OFF(in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 3: PRTn, where n is the number of the local printer. Determine the numbers by searching for PRT(in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 4: PUNn, where n is the number of the local card punch. Determine the numbers by searching for PUN (in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 5: Nodename is the NAME parameter value specified on the NODE statement. Review the JES2 parameters for NJE node definitions by searching for NODE(in the report.

NOTE 6: Rnnnn.PRm, where nnnn is the number of the remote workstation and m is the number of the printer. Determine the numbers by searching for .PR in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 7: Rnnnn.PUm, where nnnn is the number of the remote workstation and m is the number of the punch.

Determine the numbers by searching for .PU in the JES2 parameters.

c) Ensure the following items are in effect:

- 1) The WRITER resource class is active.
- 2) The profile JES2.** is defined to the WRITER resource class with a UACC(NONE).
- 3) The other resources mentioned in (b) are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the WRITER resource class with UACC(NONE).

NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for output destinations that are permitted to route output for all users. Currently, there is no guidance on which output destinations are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, and offload output destinations.

Examples:

```
setr classact(writer) setr
genccmd(writer) generic(writer)
```

```
setr raclist(writer)
RDEF WRITER JES2.** owner(admin) AUDIT(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.** owner(admin) AUDIT(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.JT owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE)
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.ST owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE)
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.PRT* owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.PUN* owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.NJE.** owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.RJE.** owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
```

```
pe JES2.** cl(writer) id(<syspau>) pe
JES2.LOCAL.** cl(writer) id(<syspau>) pe
JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.JT cl(writer) id(<syspau>)
pe JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.ST cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.LOCAL.PRT* cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.LOCAL.PUN* cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.NJE.** cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.RJE.** cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) setr racl(writer) Ref
```

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98205

Group Title: JS000050

Rule ID: SV-107309r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000050](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS JES2 output devices must be properly controlled for classified systems.

Vulnerability Discussion: To mitigate the risk of unauthorized access to sensitive information by entities that have been issued certificates by DoD-approved PKIs, all DoD systems (e.g., web servers and web portals) must be properly configured to incorporate access control methods that do not rely solely on the possession of a certificate for access. Successful authentication must not automatically give an entity access to an asset or security boundary. Authorization procedures and controls must be implemented to ensure each authenticated entity also has a validated and current authorization. Authorization is the process of determining whether an entity, once authenticated, is permitted to access a specific asset. Information systems use access control policies and enforcement mechanisms to implement this requirement.

Access control policies include: identity-based policies, role-based policies, and attribute-based policies. Access enforcement mechanisms include: access control lists, access control matrices, and cryptography. These policies and mechanisms must be employed by the application to control access between users (or processes acting on behalf of users) and objects (e.g., devices, files, records, processes, programs, and domains) in the information system.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) Review the local printer definitions by searching for PRT(or PRINTER in the member.
- c) Review the local card definitions by searching for PUN(or PUNCH in the member.
- d) Review the remote workstation printer definitions by searching for .PR in the member.
- e) Review the remote workstation punch definitions by searching for .PU in the member.
- f) Use the list of NJE nodes from ZJES012 and the list of offload receivers from ZJES0021.
- g) From Administrator main Menu, select option 9 Analyzer. Press ENTER
- h) From Analyzer main menu, select 4 Batch Reports. Press ENTER
- i) From Batch Reports menu, select F Subsystem Name Table Analysis. Press

ENTER

- j) On the Subsystem Name Table Analysis panel, set the value for SORT CRITERIA to YES and other values to NO. Press ENTER
- k) On the SORT SELECTIONS panel, enter 1 next to SEQ. Press ENTER
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- m) Review the output. Note that the first entry in the report is the JES2 subsystem name and is typically JES2. This will be used in step p.
- n) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- o) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- p) In all profile names, replace JES2 with the JES2 subsystem name determined in step m.
- q) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.** in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- s) Save the output for use in the JES2.** (backstop profile) check.
- t) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.OFF%.* in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- u) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- v) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.*, JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST, and JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT (spool offload related) checks.
- w) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.PRT% in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- x) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- y) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.PRTn ((local printer)) checks.
- z) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.LOCAL.PUN% in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER

- aa) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- bb) Save the output for use in the JES2.LOCAL.PUNn (local punch) check.
- cc) Using the node list mentioned in step f, on the General Resources Reports panel, enter nodename in the Profile field, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- dd) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- ee) Save the output for use in the nodename (NJE node) check.
- ff) Repeat step u through w for each nodename in the list
- gg) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.RJE.R%%%.P* in the Profile field, enter WRITER in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- hh) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- ii) Save the output for use in the JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm and JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm (remote printer and punch) checks.
- jj) From Administrator main Menu, select option 2 Security Server Commands. Press ENTER
- kk) From the VRC main menu, select option 5 SETROPTS. Press ENTER
- ll) Under Class Options, enter E after CDT Classes. Press ENTER
- mm) Enter L WRITER on the command line. Note if there is a Y under the column labeled ACT. If yes, this indicates the class is active. Print the screen and save it for the class active check.
- nn) Review the following resources in the WRITER resource class where JES2 is the name of the JES2 subsystem:
- * JES2.** (backstop profile) review output from step s.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.* (spool offload transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST (spool offload SYSOUT transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT (spool offload job transmitter) review output from step v.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.PRTn (local printer) review output from step q.
 - * JES2.LOCAL.PUNn (local punch) review output from step t.
 - * JES2.NJE.nodename (NJE node) review output from step ee.
 - * JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm (remote printer) review output from step ii.
 - * JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm (remote punch) review output from step ii.
- NOTE: If any of these are not found, that resource in the WRITER resource class does not have to be defined.
- oo) Ensure the following items are in effect:
5. The WRITER resource class is active (obtained in step mm).

6. The resources mentioned in step nn are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the WRITER resource class.
7. UACC(NONE) is specified for all resources.
8. NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for input sources that are permitted to submit jobs for all users. Currently, the Z/OS STIG provides no guidance on which input sources are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, offload, and STC input sources. pp) If all of the items mentioned in (oo) are true, there is NO FINDING. qq) If any of the items mentioned in (oo) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

WRITER Resource Definitions

Review the following resources in the WRITER resource class:

JES2.**	(backstop profile)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.*	(spool offload transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.ST	(spool offload SYSOUT transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.OFFn.JT	(spool offload job transmitter)
JES2.LOCAL.PRTn	(local printer)
JES2.LOCAL.PUNn	(local punch)
JES2.NJE.nodename	(NJE node)
JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PRm	(remote printer)
JES2.RJE.Rnnnn.PUm	(remote punch)

NOTE 1: JES2 is typically the name of the JES2 subsystem. Refer to the SUBSYS report and locate the entry with the description of PRIMARY JOB ENTRY SUBSYSTEM. The SUBSYSTEM NAME of this entry is the name of the JES2 subsystem.

NOTE 2: OFFn, where n is the number of the offload transmitter. Determine the numbers by searching for OFF(in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 3: PRTn, where n is the number of the local printer. Determine the numbers by searching for PRT(in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 4: PUNn, where n is the number of the local card punch. Determine the numbers by searching for PUN (in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 5: Nodename is the NAME parameter value specified on the NODE statement. Review the JES2 parameters for NJE node definitions by searching for NODE(in the report.

NOTE 6: Rnnnn.PRm, where nnnn is the number of the remote workstation and m is the number of the printer. Determine the numbers by searching for .PR in the JES2 parameters.

NOTE 7: Rnnnn.PUm, where nnnn is the number of the remote workstation and m is the number of the punch.

Determine the numbers by searching for .PU in the JES2 parameters.

- c) Ensure the following items are in effect:

- 1) The WRITER resource class is active.
- 2) The profile JES2.** is defined to the WRITER resource class with a UACC(NONE).
- 3) The other resources mentioned in (b) are protected by generic and/or fully qualified profiles defined to the WRITER resource class with UACC(NONE).

NOTE: UACC(READ) is allowed for output destinations that are permitted to route output for all users. Currently, there is no guidance on which output destinations are appropriate for UACC(READ). However, common sense should prevail during the analysis. For example, UACC(READ) would typically be inappropriate for RJE, NJE, and offload output destinations.

Examples:

```

setr classact(writer) setr
genccmd(writer) generic(writer)
setr raclist(writer)
RDEF WRITER JES2.** owner(admin) AUDIT(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.** owner(admin) AUDIT(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.JT owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE)
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.ST owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE)
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.PRT* owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.LOCAL.PUN* owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.NJE.** owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')
RDEF WRITER JES2.RJE.** owner(admin) audit(ALL) UACC(NONE) -
data('Reference SRR PDI ZJES0031')

pe JES2.** cl(writer) id(<syspau>) pe
JES2.LOCAL.** cl(writer) id(<syspau>) pe
JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.JT cl(writer) id(<syspau>)
pe JES2.LOCAL.OFF*.ST cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.LOCAL.PRT* cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.LOCAL.PUN* cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.NJE.** cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) pe JES2.RJE.** cl(writer)
id(<syspau>) setr racl(writer) Ref

```

CCI: CCI-000000

Group ID (Vulid): V-98207

Group Title: JS000060

Rule ID: SV-107311r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000060](#)

Rule Title: JESSPOOL resources are not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 spool resources include all SYSOUT, SYSLOG, JESTRACE, and JESNEWS data sets. Failure to properly control JES2 spool resources could result in unauthorized personnel accessing job output, system activity logs, and trace data containing userid and password information. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) From Administrator main Menu, select option 2 Security Server Commands.

Press ENTER

b) From the VRC main menu, select option 5 SETROPTS. Press ENTER

c) Under Class Options, enter E after CDT Classes. Press ENTER

d) Enter L JESSPOOL on the command line. Note if there is a Y under the column labeled ACT. If yes, this indicates the class is active. Print the screen and save it for the class active check.

e) Ensure that the JESSPOOL resource class is active (obtained in step d).

f) If all of the items mentioned in (e) are true, there is NO FINDING.

g) If any of the items mentioned in (e) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Ensure that the JESSPOOL resource class is active:

Use the RACF Command: SETROPTS CLASSACT(JESSPOOL).

Note that you should also enable GENERICS and optionally RACLIST this class in memory.

SETR GENERIC(JESSPOOL) GENCMD(JESSPOOL)

SETR RACLIST(JESSPOOL)

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98209

Group Title: JS000070

Rule ID: SV-107313r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000070](#)

Rule Title: JESNEWS rewsources are not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 spool resources include all SYSOUT, SYSLOG, JESTRACE, and JESNEWS data sets. Failure to properly control JES2 spool resources could result in unauthorized personnel accessing job output, system activity logs, and trace data containing userid and password information. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) From Administrator main Menu, select option 9 Analyzer. Press ENTER
- c) From Analyzer main menu, select 4 Batch Reports. Press ENTER
- d) From Batch Reports menu, select F Subsystem Name Table Analysis. Press <ENTER>
- e) On the Subsystem Name Table Analysis panel, set the value for SORT CRITERIA to YES and other values to NO. Press ENTER
- f) On the SORT SELECTIONS panel, enter 1 next to SEQ. Press ENTER
- g) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- h) Review the output. Note that the first entry in the report is the JES2 subsystem name and is typically JES2. This will be used in step k.
- i) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press <ENTER>
- j) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- k) In all profile names, replace JES2 with the JES2 subsystem name determined in step h.
- l) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS in the Profile field, enter OPERCMDS in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Enter 2 on the command line to select Audit Flags and Press ENTER

- m) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- n) Save the output for use in the JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS audit checks.
- o) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JESINPUT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and Press ENTER
- p) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- q) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- r) Save the output for use in the JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS audit checks.
- s) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS in the Profile field, enter OPERCMDS in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- t) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- u) Save the output for use in the JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS UACC checks.
- v) Ensure the following items are in effect:
 - 1. The JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS resource is defined to the OPERCMDS resource class with a default access of NONE and all access is logged.
 - 2. Access authorization to the JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS resource in the OPERCMDS class restricts CONTROL access to the appropriate personnel (i.e., users responsible for maintaining the JES News data set) and all access is logged.
- w) If both of the items in (v) are true, there is NO FINDING.
- x) If either item in (v) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: JESNEWS Access Controls

Refer to "Protecting JESNEWS" in Chapter 7 of the JES2 Init & Tuning Guide.

- a) Ensure the following items are in effect:
 - 1) The JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS resource is defined to the OPERCMDS resource class with a default access of NONE and all access is logged.

NOTE: JES2 is typically the name of the JES2 subsystem. Refer to the SUBSYS report and locate the entry with the description of PRIMARY JOB ENTRY SUBSYSTEM. The SUBSYSTEM NAME of this entry is the name of the JES2 subsystem.

2) Access authorization to the JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS resource in the OPERCMDS class restricts CONTROL access to the appropriate personnel (i.e., users responsible for maintaining the JES News data set) and all access is logged.

Examples of setting up proper protection are shown here:

```
RDEF OPERCMDS JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))  
DATA('COMPLY WITH ZJES0042')
```

```
PERMIT JES2.UPDATE.JESNEWS CLASS(OPERCMDS) ID(<syspau>) ACCESS(CONTROL)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001762

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98211

Group Title: JS000080

Rule ID: SV-107315r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000080](#)

Rule Title: JESTRACE and/or SYSLOG resources are not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 spool resources include all SYSOUT, SYSLOG, JESTRACE, and JESNEWS data sets. Failure to properly control JES2 spool resources could result in unauthorized personnel accessing job output, system activity logs, and trace data containing userid and password information. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Use the list of NJE nodes from ZJES012 to determine the localnodeid by searching for OWNNODE in the NJEDEF statement, and then searching for NODE(nnnn) (where nnnn is the value specified by OWNNODE). The NAME parameter value specified on this NODE statement is the localnodeid.
- b) From Administrator main Menu, select option 9 Analyzer. Press ENTER
- c) From Analyzer main menu, select 4 Batch Reports. Press ENTER
- d) From Batch Reports menu, select F Subsystem Name Table Analysis. Press ENTER
- e) On the Subsystem Name Table Analysis panel, set the value for SORT CRITERIA to YES and other values to NO. Press ENTER
- f) On the SORT SELECTIONS panel, enter 1 next to SEQ. Press ENTER
- g) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- h) Review the output. Note that the first entry in the report is the JES2 subsystem name and is typically JES2. This will be used in step k.
- i) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- j) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- k) In all profile names, replace localnodeid with the NAME parameter from the node determined as OWNNODE in step a and replace JES2 with the JES2 subsystem name determined in step h.

- l) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter localnodeid.JES2.* in the Profile field, enter JESSPOOL in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- m) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- n) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- o) Save the output for use in the localnodeid.JES2.\$TRCLOG.taskid.*.JESTRACE check.
- p) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter localnodeid.+MASTER+.* in the Profile field, enter JESSPOOL in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- q) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- r) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- s) Save the output for use in the localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.jobid.*.SYSLOG* checks.
- t) Ensure that access authorization for the following resources:

localnodeid.JES2.\$TRCLOG.taskid.*.JESTRACE

localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.jobid.*.SYSLOG or localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.jobid.-.SYSLOG

is restricted to the following:

1. Userid(s) associated with external writer(s)

NOTE: An external writer is an STC that removes data sets from the JES spool. In this case, it is responsible for archiving the JESTRACE and SYSLOG data sets. The STC default name is XWTR and the external writer program is called IASXWR00.

2. Systems personnel and security administrators responsible for diagnosing JES2 and z/OS problems.
3. Application Development and Application Support personnel responsible for diagnosing application problems can have READ access to the SYSLOG resource

u) If item (t) is true, there is NO FINDING.

v) If item (t) is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that access authorization for resources defined to the JESTRACE and SYSLOG resources in the JESSPOOL resource class is restricted to the appropriate personnel.

Review the following resources defined to the JESSPOOL resource class:

Ensure the following resources are defined to the JESSPOOL resource class with a UACC(NONE):

```
localnodeid.JES2.$TRCLOG.taskid.*.JESTRACE
localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.jobid.*.SYSLOG or
localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.jobid.*.SYSLOG
```

NOTE: These resource profiles may be more generic as long as they pertain directly to the JESTRACE and SYSLOG data sets. For example:

```
localnodeid.JES2.$TRCLOG.*.**
localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.*.** or
localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.*.**
```

NOTE: Review the JES2 parameters to determine the localnodeid by searching for OWNNODE in the NJEDEF statement, and then searching for NODE(nnnn) (where nnnn is the value specified by OWNNODE). The NAME parameter value specified on this NODE statement is the localnodeid. Another method is to issue the JES2 command \$D NODE,NAME,OWNNODE=YES to obtain the NAME of the OWNNODE.

Ensure that access authorization for the resources mentioned above is restricted to the following:

Userid(s) associated with external writer(s) can have complete access.

NOTE: An external writer is a STC that removes data sets from the JES spool. In this case, it is responsible for archiving the JESTRACE and SYSLOG data sets. The STC default name is XWTR and the external writer program is called IASXWR00.

Systems personnel and security administrators responsible for diagnosing JES2 and z/OS problems can have complete access.

Application Development and Application Support personnel responsible for diagnosing application problems can have READ access to the SYSLOG resource.

Examples:

```
RDEFINE JESSPOOL localnodeid.JES2.$TRCLOG.*.** audit(failures(read)) uacc(NONE)
data('Reference srr finding ZJES0044 ') owner(admin)
```

```
RDEFINE JESSPOOL localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.*.** audit(failures(read))
uacc(NONE) data('Reference srr finding ZJES0044') owner(admin) or
RDEFINE JESSPOOL localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.*.** audit(failures(read)) uacc(NONE)
data('Reference srr finding ZJES0044') owner(admin)
```

```
PE localnodeid.JES2.$TRCLOG.*. cl(jesspool) id(<syspautd> <secaaudt>) acc(a)
PE localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.*. cl(jesspool) id(<syspautd> <secaaudt>) acc(a)
PE localnodeid.+MASTER+.SYSLOG.*. cl(jesspool) id(<appdpautd> <appsautd>)
acc(r) or
PE localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.*. cl(jesspool) id(<syspautd> <secaaudt>) acc(a)
PE localnodeid.+BYPASS+.SYSLOG.*. cl(jesspool) id(<appdpautd> <appsautd>) acc(r)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001762

Group ID (Vulid): V-98213

Group Title: JS000090

Rule ID: SV-107317r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000090](#)

Rule Title: JES2 spool resources will be controlled in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 spool resources include all SYSOUT, SYSLOG, JESTRACE, and JESNEWS data sets. Failure to properly control JES2 spool resources could result in unauthorized personnel accessing job output, system activity logs, and trace data containing userid and password information. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Use the list of NJE nodes from ZJES012 to determine the localnodeid by searching for OWNNODE in the NJEDEF statement, and then searching for NODE(nnnn) (where nnnn is the value specified by OWNNODE). The NAME parameter value specified on this NODE statement is the localnodeid.
- b) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- c) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- d) In all profile names, replace localnodeid with the NAME parameter from the node determined as OWNNODE in step a.
- e) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter localnodeid.* in the Profile field, enter JESSPOOL in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- f) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- g) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- h) Save the output for use in the localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name check #1.
- i) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter localnodeid.* in the Profile field, enter JESSPOOL in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 2 Audit Flags and press ENTER

- j) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- k) Save the output for use in the localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name check #3.
- l) Review the output from steps h and k for resource profiles with the following naming convention. These profiles may be fully qualified as indicated below or generic:
- * localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name
 - * localnodeid The name of the node on which the SYSIN or SYSOUT data set currently resides.
 - * userid The userid associated with the job. This is the userid RACF uses for validation purposes when the job runs.
 - * jobname The name that appears in the name field of the JOB statement.
 - * jobid The job number JES2 assigned to the job.
 - * dsnumber The unique data set number JES2 assigned to the spool data set. A D is the first character of this qualifier.
 - * name The name of the data set specified in the DSN= parameter of the DD statement. If the JCL did not specify DSN= on the DD statement that creates the spool data set, JES2 uses a question mark (?).
- m) If the resources described in (l) are not present, there is NO FINDING.
- n) If the resources described in (l) are present, ensure the following items are in effect:
1. All users shall have access to their own JESSPOOL resources. This resource access does not require logging.
 2. The resource localnodeid.** will be restricted to only system programmers, operators and automated operations personnel, with access of ALTER. All access will be logged. (localnodeid. resource includes all generic and/or masked permissions, example: localnodeid.**, localnodeid.*, etc)
 3. The JESSPOOL localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name, whether generic and/or masked, can be made available to users when approved by the IAO. Access will be identified at the minimum access for the user to accomplish the users function. UPDATE, CONTROL, and ALTER access will be logged. An example is team members within a team, providing the capability to view, help, and/or debug other team member jobs/processes.
 4. CSSMTP will be restricted to localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name, whether generic and/or masked when approved by the IAO. All access will be logged.
 5. Spooling products users (CA-Spool, CA View, etc.) will be restricted to localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name, whether generic and/or masked when approved by the IAO. All access will be logged.
- o) If all of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- p) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will develop a plan of action to implement the required changes. Ensure the following items are in effect for JESSPOOL resources. The JESSPOOL may have more restrictive security at the direction of the IAO.

The JESSPOOL resources may be fully qualified, be specified as generic, or be specified with masking as indicated below:

localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name localnodeid The name of the node on which the SYSIN or SYSOUT data set currently resides.

userid The userid associated with the job. This is the userid used for validation purposes when the job runs.

jobname The name that appears in the name field of the JOB statement.

jobid The job number JES2 assigned to the job.

dsnumber The unique data set number JES2 assigned to the spool data set. A D is the first character of this qualifier.

name The name of the data set specified in the DSN= parameter of the DD statement. If the JCL did not specify DSN= on the DD statement that creates the spool data set, JES2 uses a question mark (?).

By default a user has access only to that user s own JESSPOOL resources. However, situations exist where a user legitimately requires access to jobs that run under another user s userid. In particular, if a user routes SYSOUT to an external writer, the external writer should have access to that user s SYSOUT.

The localnodeid. resource will be restricted to only system programmers, operators, and automated operations personnel with access of ALTER. All access will be logged. (localnodeid. resource includes all generic and/or masked permissions, example: localnodeid.**, localnodeid.*, etc)

```
RDEF JESSPOOL localnodeid.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
DATA('PROTECT
JESSPOOL AT HIGH LEVEL, REF ZJES0046')
PE localnodeid.** CL(JESSPOOL) ID(syspautd) ACC(A)
```

The JESSPOOL localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name, whether generic and/or masked, can be made available to users, when approved by the IAO. Access will be identified at the minimum access for the user to accomplish the users function, SERVICE(READ, UPDATE, DELETE, ADD). All access will be logged. An example is team members within a team, providing the capability to view, help, and/or debug other team member jobs/processes. If frequent situations occur where users working on a common project require selective access to each other's jobs, then the installation may delegate to the individual users the authority to grant access, but only with the approval of the IAO.

```
RDEF JESSPOOL localnode.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name
UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
DATA('PROTECT JESSPOOL, REF ZJES0046')
PE localnode.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name CL(JESSPOOL) ID(<users_or_groups>) ACC(R)
```

If IBM s SDSF product is installed on the system, resources defined to the JESSPOOL resource class control functions related to jobs, output groups, and SYSIN/SYSOUT data sets on various SDSF panels.

CSSMTP will not be granted to the JESSPOOL resource of the high level node. or localnodeid. . CSSMTP can have access to the specific approved JESSPOOL resources, minimally qualified to the node.userid. and all access will be logged. This will ensure system records who (userid) sent traffic to CSSMTP, when and what job/process.

Spooling products users (CA-SPOOL, CA View, etc.) will be restricted to localnodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.dsnumber.name, whether generic and/or masked when approved by the IAO. Logging of access is not required.

The IAO will review JESSPOOL resource rules. If a rule has been determined not to have been used within the last 2 years, the rule shall be removed.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98215

Group Title: JS000100

Rule ID: SV-107301r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000100](#)

Rule Title: JES2 system commands are not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 system commands are used to control JES2 resources and the operating system environment. Failure to properly control access to JES2 system commands could result in unauthorized personnel issuing sensitive JES2 commands. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Administrator main Menu, select option 9 Analyzer. Press ENTER
- b) From Analyzer main menu, select 4 Batch Reports. Press ENTER
- c) From Batch Reports menu, select F Subsystem Name Table Analysis. Press ENTER
- d) On the Subsystem Name Table Analysis panel, set the value for SORT CRITERIA to YES and other values to NO. Press ENTER
- e) On the SORT SELECTIONS panel, enter 1 next to SEQ. Press ENTER
- f) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- g) Review the output. Note that the first entry in the report is the JES2 subsystem name and is typically JES2. This will be used in step j.
- h) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- i) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- j) In all profile names, replace JES2 with the JES2 subsystem name determined in step g.
- k) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.* in the Profile field, enter OPERCMDS in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- l) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- m) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- n) Save the output for use in the JES2.* access list check.

- o) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.* in the Profile field, enter OPERCMDS in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Enter 2 on the command line to select Audit Flags and Press ENTER
- p) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- q) Save the output for use in the JES2.* audit check.
- r) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter JES2.* in the Profile field, enter OPERCMDS in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER
- s) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- t) Save the output for use in the JES2.* UACC check.
- u) If the JES2.** resource is defined to the OPERCMDS class with a default access of NONE and all access is logged, there is NO FINDING.
- v) If access to JES2 system commands defined in the table entitled Controls on JES2 System Commands in the z/OS STIG Addendum , is restricted to the appropriate personnel (e.g., operations staff, systems programming personnel, general users), there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Use the Auth category specified in the table below as a guideline to determine appropriate personnel access to system commands.

- w) If access to specific JES2 system commands is logged as indicated in the table entitled Controls on JES2 System Commands in the z/OS STIG Addendum as indicated in the LOG column, there is NO FINDING.
- x) If either (b), (c), or (d) above is untrue for any JES2 system command resource, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Extended MCS support allows the installation to control the use of JES2 system commands through the ACP. These commands are subject to various types of potential abuse. For this reason, it is necessary to place restrictions on the JES2 system commands that can be entered by particular operators.

Some commands are particularly dangerous and should only be used when less drastic options have been exhausted. Misuse of these commands can create a situation in which the only recovery is an IPL.

To control access to JES2 system commands, apply the following recommendations when implementing security:

- 1) Define the JES2.** resource in the OPERCMDS class with a default access of NONE and all access is logged.
- 2) Define the JES2 system commands as specified in the "Controls on JES2 System Commands" table, in the zOS STIG Addendum restricts access to the appropriate personnel (e.g., operations staff, systems programming personnel, general users).

NOTE: Use the GROUP category specified in the table referenced above as a guideline to determine appropriate personnel access to system commands.

- 3) Define the JES2 system commands with proper logging as specified in the "Controls on JES2 System Commands" table, in the zOS STIG Addendum.

Build a command file based on the referenced JES2 Command Table. A sample of the commands in the command file is provided here:

```
RDEF OPERCMDS JES2.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) DATA('REQUIRED  
BY SRR PDI ZJES0052')
```

```
RDEF OPERCMDS JES2.<command>.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) DATA  
( 'REQUIRED BY SRR PDI ZJES0052' )  
PE JES2.<command>.** CL(OPERCMDS) ID(<syspau>) ACC(U)
```

```
SETR RACL(OPERCMDS) REF
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98217

Group Title: JS000110

Rule ID: SV-107301r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000110](#)

Rule Title: Surrogate users must be controlled in accordance with proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: Surrogate users have the ability to submit jobs on behalf of another user (the execution user) without specifying the execution user's password. Jobs submitted by surrogate users run with the identity of the execution user. Failure to properly control surrogate users could result in unauthorized personnel accessing sensitive resources. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- b) Select option 4 General Resource Profile
- c) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter *.SUBMIT in the Profile field, enter SURROGAT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Select option 4 Access Lists and press ENTER
- d) On the Processing Options Panel, enter Y for Explode RACF groups in access list at end of report? and Explode Users/Groups in Surrogate ID access list at end of report? Press ENTER
- e) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- f) Save the output for use in the executionuserid.SUBMIT access list check.
- g) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter *.SUBMIT in the Profile field, enter SURROGAT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Enter 2 on the command line to select Audit Flags and press ENTER
- h) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- i) Save the output for use in the executionuserid.SUBMIT audit check.
- j) On the General Resources Reports panel, enter *.SUBMIT in the Profile field, enter SURROGAT in the Class field and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER

- k) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- l) Save the output for use in the executionuserid.SUBMIT UACC check.
- m) If no executionuserid.SUBMIT resources are defined to the SURROGAT resource class, there is NO FINDING.
- n) If executionuserid.SUBMIT resources are defined to the SURROGAT resource class, ensure the following items are in effect regarding surrogate controls:
 - o) All executionuserid.SUBMIT resources defined to the SURROGAT resource class specify a default access of NONE.
 - p) All resource access is except for scheduling tasks.
 - q) Access authorization is restricted to scheduling tools, started tasks or other applications required for running production jobs.
 - r) Other users may have minimal access required for running production jobs with documentation properly approved and filed with the site security official (ISSM or equivalent).
- s) If all of the items in (n) are true, there is NO FINDING.
- t) If any item in (n) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: For executionuserid.SUBMIT resources defined to the SURROGAT resource class, ensure the following items are in effect regarding surrogate controls:

All executionuserid.SUBMIT resources defined to the SURROGAT resource class specify a default access of NONE.

All resource access is logged except for scheduling tasks. This is optional and the ISSM/ISSO scheduling tasks may be exempted.

Access authorization is restricted to scheduling tools, started tasks or other system applications required for running production jobs.

Other users may have minimal access required for running production jobs with documentation properly approved and filed with the site security official (ISSM or equivalent).

Consider the following recommendations when implementing security for Surrogate Users:

Keep the use of Surrogate Users outside of those granted to the scheduling software to a minimum number of individuals.

The simplest configuration is to only use Surrogate resource for the appropriate Scheduling task/software for production scheduling purposes as documented.

Temporary use of surrogate resource of the production batch to the scheduling tasks may be allowed for a period for testing by the appropriate specific production Support Team members. Authorization, eligibility and test period is determined by site policy.

Access authorization is restricted to the minimum number of personnel required for running production jobs. However, Surrogate usage should not become the default for all jobs submitted by individual users (i.e., system programmer shall use their assigned individual userids for software installation, duties, whereas a Cross Authorized ACID would normally be utilized for scheduled batch production only and as such shall normally be limited to the scheduling task such as CONTROL M) and not granted as a normal daily basis to individual users..

Command samples are provided to define/permit SURROGAT profiles:

```
SETR CLASSACT(SURROGAT)
SETR GENERIC(SURROGAT) GENCMD(SURROGAT)
SETR RACL(SURROGAT)
```

```
RDEF SURROGAT <batchid>.SUBMIT UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) DATA
('SUBMIT JOBS FOR <batchid>, REFERENCE ZJES0060')
```

```
PE <batchid>.SUBMIT CL(SURROGAT) ID(<authorized user such as CONTROL M>)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002233

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98219

Group Title: JS000120

Rule ID: SV-107323r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [JS000120](#)

Rule Title: RJE workstations and NJE nodes are not controlled in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: JES2 RJE workstations and NJE nodes provide a method of sending and receiving data (e.g., jobs, job output, and commands) from remote locations. Failure to properly identify and control these remote facilities could result in unauthorized sources transmitting data to and from the operating system. This exposure may threaten the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

Note that this guidance addresses RJE Workstations that are "Dedicated". If an RJE workstation is dedicated, the assumption is that the RJE to host connection is hard-wired between the RJE and host. In this case the RMT definition statement will contain the keyword LINE= which specifies that this RJE is only connected via that one LINE statement.

- a) Determine the JES2PARM member as specified in the HASPPARM DD of the PROCLIB member used to start JES2.
- b) Review the workstation definitions by searching for RMT(in the member).
- c) From Administrator main Menu, select option 3 Security Server Reports; Press ENTER
- d) Select option 1 User Profile. Change the * next to User ID to RMT* and press ENTER
- e) Print the screen(s) for use in check #1.
- f) Perform the following for each RJE workstation found:
- g) Enter LR command next to each userid on your list. Press ENTER
- h) Save the name of the dataset being browsed. Split screen, select option 1, and view the dataset from step h. Save it to your documentation library PDS. Note the PDS name and member name for use in check #2. Close the view session.
- i) Press <PF3> to get to the next userid and repeat the process from step h. When all userids have been processed, you will be returned to the userid list. Press <PF3> once more to return to Security Server Reports.
- j) Select option 17 ID in Access List. Press ENTER

- k) Select option 1 ID in Access List. Enter U next to ID Type, enter RMT* for ID Name, and enter B for Batch/Online. Press ENTER twice
- l) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter E on the command line.
- m) Change the REGION parameter on the execute card to 0M. Press <PF3>
- n) On the JCL Submit Processing panel, enter S on the command line to submit the job. Press ENTER
- o) Save the output
- p) For each RJE workstation definition found by searching for RMT(in step b perform the following:
 - 1. A userid of RMTnnnn is defined to RACF for each RJE workstation, where nnnn is the number on the RMT statement (review output from step e)
 - 2. No userid segments (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.) are defined (review output from step h)
 - 3. Restricted from accessing all data sets and resources (review output from step o).
 - 4. NOTE: If no RJE workstations are defined to JES2, this is NOT APPLICABLE.
- q) If all of (p) is true, there is NO FINDING.
- r) If any of (p) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: RJE Userids

Note that this guidance addresses RJE Workstations that are "Dedicated". If an RJE workstation is dedicated, the assumption is that the RJE to host connection is hard-wired between the RJE and host. In this case the RMT definition statement will contain the keyword LINE= which specifies that this RJE is only connected via that one LINE statement.

There are no known non-dedicated RJE Workstations in use within CSD. If such devices are used, the site should open a ticket with the FSO and jointly develop proper security controls.

- a) Review the JES2 parameters for RJE workstation definitions by searching for RMT(in the report.
- b) Ensure the RJE workstation userids are defined as follows:
 - 1) A userid of RMTnnnn is defined to RACF for each RJE workstation, where nnnn is the number on the RMT statement.
 - 2) No userid segments (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.) are defined.
 - 3) Restricted from accessing all data sets and resources with exception of the corresponding JESINPUT-class profile for that remote.

Review Chapter 17 of the RACF Security Admin Guide. The following is an example that show proper implementation:

AG RMTGRP OWNER(ADMIN) SUPGROUP(ADMIN)

AU RMT777 NAME('RMT RJE 777') DFLTGRP(RMTGRP) OWNER(RMTGRP) DATA('COMPLY WITH ZJES0011') NOPASS RESTRICTED

PE RMT777 CL(JESINPUT) ID(RMT777)

c) Ensure that a FACILITY-Class profile exists in the format RJE.RMTnnnn where nnn identifies the remote number.

A command example is shown here:

RDEF FACILITY RJE.RMT777 UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) DATA('COMPLY WITH ZJES0011 FOR RJE 777')

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98221

Group Title: OS000010

Rule ID: SV-107325r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000010](#)

Rule Title: Non-standard SMF data collection options specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: SMF data collection is the basic unit of tracking of all system functions and actions. Included in this tracking data are the audit trails from each of the ACPs. If the control options for the recording of this tracking are not properly maintained, then accountability cannot be monitored, and its use in the execution of a contingency plan could be compromised.

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 3;L;<ENTER>
- b) Place a B next to the first occurrence of SMFPRMnn
- c) If all the options for SMF data gathering are set as required (in the table shown at the end of this STIG) there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Issues with subtype 4 and 5 of type 30 records can be exempted from collection. The following is an example of the entry to perform this:

SUBSYS(STC,EXITS(IEFU29,IEFU83,IEFU84,IEFUJP,IEFUSO),
INTERVAL(SMF,SYNC),NODETAIL)

NOTE: If the JWT parameter is greater than 15 minutes, and the system is processing unclassified information, review the following items. If any of these items is true, there is NO FINDING.

- d) If a session is not terminated, but instead is locked out after 15 minutes of Inactivity, a process must be in place that requires user identification and Authentication before the session is unlocked. Session lock-out will be Implemented through system controls or terminal screen protections.
- e) A system s default time for terminal lock-out or session termination may be lengthened to 30 minutes at the discretion of the IAM. The IAM will maintain the documentation for each system with a time-out adjusted beyond the 15-minute recommendation to explain the basis for this decision.
- f) The IAM may set selected userids to have a time-out of up to 60 minutes in order to complete critical reports or transactions without timing out. Each exception must meet the following criteria:

The time-out exception cannot exceed 60 minutes.

A letter of justification fully documenting the user requirement(s) must be submitted and approved by the site IAM. In addition, this letter must identify an alternate means of access control for the terminal(s) involved (e.g., a room that is locked at all times, a room with a cipher lock to limit access, a password protected screen saver set to 30 minutes or less, etc.).

The requirement must be revalidated on an annual basis.

If variances from the below SMF collection options (with the exception of the ones mentioned in (b) above), this is a FINDING.

The settings for several parameters are critical to the collection process:

ACTIVE: Activates the collection of SMF data.

JWT(15): The maximum amount of consecutive time that an executing job may spend as ineligible to use any CPU resources before being canceled for inactivity. The STIG requirement for Job Wait Time is 15 minutes. (This may be extended if controlled through other means, e.g., a Session Manager or ACP.)

MAXDORM(0500): Specifies the amount of real time that SMF allows data to remain in an SMF buffer before it is written to a recording data set.

SID: Specifies the system ID to be recorded in all SMF records.

SYS(DETAIL): Controls the level of detail recorded.

SYS(INTERVAL): Ensures the periodic recording of data for long running jobs.

SYS: Specifies the types and sub types of SMF records that are to be collected.

SYS(TYPE) indicates that the supplied list is inclusive (i.e., specifies the record types to be collected). Record types not listed are not collected.

SYS(NOTYPE) indicates that the supplied list is exclusive (i.e., specifies those record types not to be collected). Record types not listed are not collected. The site may use either form of this parameter to specify SMF record type collection. However, at a minimum all record types listed.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that collection options for SMF Data are consistent with options specified below.

Review all SMF recording specifications found in SMFPRMxx members. Ensure that SMF recording options used are consistent with those outlined below.

The settings for several parameters are critical to the collection process:

ACTIVE Activates the collection of SMF data.

JWT(15) The maximum amount of consecutive time that an executing job may spend as ineligible to use any CPU resources before being canceled for inactivity. The requirement for Job Wait Time is 15 minutes. (This may be extended if controlled through other means, e.g., a Session Manager or ACP.)

NOTE: The JWT parameter can be greater than 15 minutes if the system is processing unclassified information and the following items are reviewed.

- 1) If a session is not terminated, but instead is locked out after 15 minutes of inactivity, a process must be in place that requires user identification and authentication before the session is unlocked. Session lock-out will be implemented through system controls or terminal screen protections.
- 2) A system's default time for terminal lock-out or session termination may be lengthened to 30 minutes at the discretion of the IAM or IAO. The IAM and/or IAO will maintain the documentation for each system with a timeout adjusted beyond the 15-minute recommendation to explain the basis for this decision.
- 3) The IAM and/or IAO may set selected userids to have a time-out of up to 60 minutes in order to complete critical reports or transactions without timing out. Each exception must meet the following criteria:
 - (a) The time-out exception cannot exceed 60 minutes.
 - (b) A letter of justification fully documenting the user requirement(s) must be submitted and approved by the site IAM or IAO. In addition, this letter must identify an alternate means of access control for the terminal(s) involved (e.g., a room that is locked at all times, a room with a cipher lock to limit access, a password protected screen saver set to 30 minutes or less, etc.).
 - (c) The requirement must be revalidated on an annual basis.

MAXDORM(0500) Specifies the amount of real time that SMF allows data to remain in an SMF buffer before it is written to a recording data set.

SID Specifies the system ID to be recorded in all SMF records

SYS(DETAIL) Controls the level of detail recorded.

SYS(INTERVAL) Ensures the periodic recording of data for long running jobs.

SYS Specifies the types and sub types of SMF records that are to be collected. **SYS(TYPE)** indicates that the supplied list is inclusive (i.e., specifies the record types to be collected). Record types not listed are not collected. **SYS(NOTYPE)** indicates that the supplied list is exclusive (i.e., specifies those record types not to be collected). Record types not listed are not collected. The site may use either form of this parameter to specify SMF record type collection. However, at a minimum all record types listed.

CCI: CCI-000057

CCI: CCI-000130

CCI: CCI-001844

CCI: CCI-001851

Group ID (Vulid): V-98223

Group Title: OS000020

Rule ID: SV-00000r0_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000020](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS BPX.SMF resource must be properly configured.

Vulnerability Discussion: Remote access services, such as those providing remote access to network devices and information systems, which lack automated monitoring capabilities, increase risk and make remote user access management difficult at best.

Remote access is access to DoD nonpublic information systems by an authorized user (or an information system) communicating through an external, non-organization-controlled network. Remote access methods include, for example, dial-up, broadband, and wireless.

Automated monitoring of remote access sessions allows organizations to detect cyber attacks and also ensure ongoing compliance with remote access policies by auditing connection activities of remote access capabilities, such as Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP), on a variety of information system components (e.g., servers, workstations, notebook computers, smartphones, and tablets).

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Using Vanguard Administrator select Security Server Reports

b) select Option 4 General Resource Profile

c) Type FACILITY in the class field and hit enter

CDT Classes:..... _ (E to edit data) *data is present*

Review the FACILITY resource class for BPX.SMF.

If the RACF rules are as follows this is not a finding.

BPX.SMF.119.94 READ allowed for users running the ssh, sftp, or scp client commands.

BPX.SMF.119.96 READ allowed for users running the scp or sftp-server server commands.

BPX.SMF.119.97 READ allowed for users running the scp or sftp client commands.

The following profile grants the permitted users the authority to write or test for any SMF record being recorded.

Access should be permitted as follows:

BPX.SMF READ access only when documented and justified in Site Security Plan. Documentation should include a reason why a more specific profile is not acceptable.

Fix Text: a) Using Vanguard Administrator select Security Server Commands

b) select Option 4 General Resource Profile

c) Type FACILITY in the class field and as example(BPX.SMF.119.94) and hit enter

d) respond Y to Display covering profile

e) If there is a covering profile you are ok

f)if not configure profile from next panel

Configure Facility resource class for BPX.SMF as follows:

BPX.SMF.119.94 READ allowed for users running the ssh, sftp, or scp client commands.

BPX.SMF.119.96 READ allowed for users running the scp or sftp-server server commands.

BPX.SMF.119.97 READ allowed for users running the scp or sftp client commands.

The following profile grants the permitted users the authority to write or test for any SMF record being recorded.

Access should be permitted as follows:

BPX.SMF READ access only when documented and justified in Site Security Plan. Documentation should include a reason why a more specific profile is not acceptable.

CCI: CCI-000067

Group ID (Vulid): V-98225

Group Title: OS000030

Rule ID: SV-107329r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000030](#)

Rule Title: SMF recording options for the TN3270 Telnet Server must be properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: The TN3270 Telnet Server can provide audit data in the form of SMF records. The SMF data produced provides information about individual sessions. This data includes the VTAM application, the remote and local IP addresses, and the remote and local IP port numbers. Failure to collect and retain audit data may contribute to the loss of accountability and hamper security audit activities.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2, ECAR-3

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TELNETPARMS SMFINIT and SMFTERM statements are coded with the STD operand within each TELNETPARMS statement block.

- a) Using SDSF or equivalent, locate the Profile configuration file specified on the PROFILE DD statement in the TCPIP started task JCL or the TN3270 started task if configured separately in z/OS 1.8 and above.
- b) Using IBM s utility Dslist or equivalent locate the Profile configuration file and browse to review the file.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

- c) Ensure the following item is in effect for the configuration statements specified in the Profile configuration file:
 - The TELNETPARMS SMFINIT and SMFTERM statements are coded with the STD operand within each TELNETPARMS statement block.

NOTE: Effective in z/OS release 1.2, the SMFINIT and SMFTERM statement can appear in both TELNETGLOBAL and TELNETPARM statement blocks.

- d) If the above is true, there is NO FINDING.
- e) If the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The system programmer responsible for the IBM Communications Server will review the TELNETPARMS SMFINIT and SMFTERM statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. Ensure they conform to the requirements specified below.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

The TELNETPARMS SMFINIT statement is coded with the TYPE119 operand within each TELNETPARMS statement block.

The TELNETPARMS SMFTERM statement is coded with the TYPE119 operand within each TELNETPARMS statement block.

NOTE: Effective in z/OS release 1.2, the SMFINIT and SMFTERM statement can appear in both TELNETGLOBAL and TELNETPARM statement blocks.

CCI: CCI-000130

Group ID (Vulid): V-98227

Group Title: OS000040

Rule ID: SV-107331r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000040](#)

Rule Title: IBM RACF must be installed and active on the system.

Vulnerability Discussion: Enterprise environments make account management for operating systems challenging and complex. A manual process for account management functions adds the risk of a potential oversight or other errors. IBM z/OS requires an external security manager to assure proper account management.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Refer to IEASYS00 member in SYS1.PARMLIB Concatenation. Determine proper IEFSSnxx member.

If RACF is defined in the SubSystem member, this is not a finding.

Fix Text: Refer to the IBM Security Server RACF System Programmer Guide and the IBM Security Server RACF Security Administrator guide to properly implement RACF on the system.

CCI: CCI-000015

Group ID (Vulid): V-98229

Group Title: OS000050

Rule ID: SV-107333r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000050](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

Vulnerability Discussion: Emergency accounts are privileged accounts that are established in response to crisis situations where the need for rapid account activation is required. Therefore, emergency account activation may bypass normal account authorization processes. If these accounts are automatically disabled, system maintenance during emergencies may not be possible, thus adversely affecting system availability.

Emergency accounts are different from infrequently used accounts (i.e., local logon accounts used by the organization's system administrators when network or normal logon/access is not available). Infrequently used accounts are not subject to automatic termination dates. Emergency accounts are accounts created in response to crisis situations, usually for use by maintenance personnel. The automatic expiration or disabling time period may be extended as needed until the crisis is resolved; however, it must not be extended indefinitely. A permanent account should be established for privileged users who need long-term maintenance accounts.

To address access requirements, many operating systems can be integrated with enterprise-level authentication/access mechanisms that meet or exceed access control policy requirements.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the documented process to disable emergency accounts.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Examine the process, if it does not include procedures to disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a process to disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

CCI: CCI-001682

Group ID (Vulid): V-98231

Group Title: OS000060

Rule ID: SV-107335r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000060](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are created.

Vulnerability Discussion: Once an attacker establishes access to a system, the attacker often attempts to create a persistent method of reestablishing access. One way to accomplish this is for the attacker to create a new account. Notification of account creation is one method for mitigating this risk. A comprehensive account management process will ensure an audit trail which documents the creation of operating system user accounts and notifies administrators and ISSOs that it exists. Such a process greatly reduces the risk that accounts will be surreptitiously created and provides logging that can be used for forensic purposes.

To address access requirements, many operating systems can be integrated with enterprise-level authentication/access/auditing mechanisms that meet or exceed access control policy requirements.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are created.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text: Develop a documented develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are created.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98209

Group Title: OS000070

Rule ID: SV-107337r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000070](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are modified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Audit tools include, but are not limited to, vendor-provided and open source audit tools needed to successfully view and manipulate audit information system activity and records. Audit tools include custom queries and report generators.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are modified.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a documented develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are modified.

CCI: CCI-001684

Group ID (Vulid): V-98235

Group Title: OS000080

Rule ID: SV-107339r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000080](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are deleted.

Vulnerability Discussion: Audit tools include, but are not limited to, vendor-provided and open source audit tools needed to successfully view and manipulate audit information system activity and records. Audit tools include custom queries and report generators.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are deleted.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a documented develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are deleted.

CCI: CCI-001685

Group ID (Vulid): V-98237

Group Title: OS000090

Rule ID: SV-107341r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000090](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are removed.

Vulnerability Discussion: When operating system accounts are removed, user accessibility is affected. Accounts are utilized for identifying individual operating system users or for identifying the operating system processes themselves. Sending notification of account removal events to the system administrator and ISSO is one method for mitigating this risk. Such a capability greatly reduces the risk that operating system accessibility will be negatively affected for extended periods of time and also provides logging that can be used for forensic purposes.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are removed.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a documented develop a process to notify appropriate personnel when accounts are removed.

CCI: CCI-001686

Group ID (Vulid): V-98239

Group Title: OS000100

Rule ID: SV-107343r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000100](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

Vulnerability Discussion: Once an attacker establishes access to a system, the attacker often attempts to create a persistent method of reestablishing access. One way to accomplish this is for the attacker to enable an existing disabled account. Sending notification of account enabling actions to the system administrator and ISSO is one method for mitigating this risk. Such a capability greatly reduces the risk that operating system accessibility will be negatively affected for extended periods of time and also provides logging that can be used for forensic purposes.

In order to detect and respond to events that affect user accessibility and application processing, operating systems must audit account enabling actions and, as required, notify the appropriate individuals so they can investigate the event.

To address access requirements, many operating systems can be integrated with enterprise-level authentication/access/auditing mechanisms that meet or exceed access control policy requirements.

Responsibility: System Administrator (

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented processes to notify the Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a documented process to notify the Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

CCI: CCI-002132

Group ID (Vulid): V-98241

Group Title: OS000110

Rule ID: SV-107345r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000110](#)

Rule Title: Required SMF data record types must be collected.

Vulnerability Discussion: SMF data collection is the basic unit of tracking of all system functions and actions. Included in this tracking data are the audit records from each of the ACPs and system. If the required SMF data record types are not being collected, then accountability cannot be monitored, and its use in the execution of a contingency plan could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECAR-1, ECAR-2

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;H. Specify YES next to Record Type cross-reference and NO for all other options. Submit the batch job and reference the report output. Review the Record Type Cross-reference section of the report.
 - b) If all of the required SMF record types (as specified below in the table IBM SMF RECORDS TO BE COLLECTED AT A MINIMUM) are being collected, there is NO FINDING.
 - c) If any of the required record types is not being collected, this is a FINDING.
- IBM SMF RECORDS TO BE COLLECTED AT A MINIMUM

0 (00) IPL

6 (06) External Writer/ JES Output Writer/ Print Services Facility (PSF)

7 (07) [SMF] Data Lost

14 (0E) INPUT or RDBACK Data Set Activity

15 (0F) OUTPUT, UPDAT, INOUT, or OUTIN Data Set Activity

17 (11) Scratch Data Set Status

18 (12) Rename Non-VSAM Data Set Status

24 (18) JES2 Spool Offload

25 (19) JES3 Device Allocation

26 (1A) JES Job Purge

30 (1E) Common Address Space Work

32 (20) TSO/E User Work Accounting

41 (29) DIV Objects and VLF Statistics

42 (2A) DFSMS statistics and configuration

43 (2B) JES Start

45 (2D) JES Withdrawal/Stop

47 (2F) JES SIGNON/Start Line (BSC)/LOGON

48 (30) JES SIGNOFF/Stop Line (BSC)/LOGOFF

49 (31) JES Integrity

52 (34) JES2 LOGON/Start Line (SNA)

53 (35) JES2 LOGOFF/Stop Line (SNA)

54 (36) JES2 Integrity (SNA)
 55 (37) JES2 Network SIGNON
 56 (38) JES2 Network Integrity
 57 (39) JES2 Network SYSOUT Transmission
 58 (3A) JES2 Network SIGNOFF
 60 (3C) VSAM Volume Data Set Updated
 61 (3D) Integrated Catalog Facility Define Activity
 62 (3E) VSAM Component or Cluster Opened
 64 (40) VSAM Component or Cluster Status
 65 (41) Integrated Catalog Facility Delete Activity
 66 (42) Integrated Catalog Facility Alter Activity
 80 (50) RACF/TOP SECRET Processing
 81 (51) RACF Initialization

 83 (53) RACF Audit Record For Data Sets
 90 (5A) System Status
 92 (5C) except subtypes 10, 11 OpenMVS File System Activity
 102 (66) DATABASE 2 Performance
 103 (67) IBM HTTP Server
 110 (6E) CICS/ESA Statistics
 118 (76) TCP/IP Statistics
 119 (77) TCP/IP Statistics
 199 (C7) TSOMON
 230 (E6) ACF2 or as specified in ACFFDR (vendor-supplied default is 230)
 231 (E7) TSS logs security events under this record type

Fix Text: The IAO and systems programming personnel will ensure that SMF recording options are consistent with those outlined below.

IBM SMF Records to be collect at a minimum

0 (00) IPL
 6 (06) External Writer/ JES Output Writer/ Print Services Facility (PSF)
 7 (07) [SMF] Data Lost
 14 (0E) INPUT or RDBACK Data Set Activity
 15 (0F) OUTPUT, UPDAT, INOUT, or OUTIN Data Set Activity
 17 (11) Scratch Data Set Status
 18 (12) Rename Non-VSAM Data Set Status
 24 (18) JES2 Spool Offload
 25 (19) JES3 Device Allocation
 26 (1A) JES Job Purge
 30 (1E) Common Address Space Work
 32 (20) TSO/E User Work Accounting
 41 (29) DIV Objects and VLF Statistics
 42 (2A) DFSMS statistics and configuration
 43 (2B) JES Start
 45 (2D) JES Withdrawal/Stop
 47 (2F) JES SIGNON/Start Line (BSC)/LOGON
 48 (30) JES SIGNOFF/Stop Line (BSC)/LOGOFF
 49 (31) JES Integrity
 52 (34) JES2 LOGON/Start Line (SNA)

53 (35) JES2 LOGOFF/Stop Line (SNA)
54 (36) JES2 Integrity (SNA)
55 (37) JES2 Network SIGNON
56 (38) JES2 Network Integrity
57 (39) JES2 Network SYSOUT Transmission
58 (3A) JES2 Network SIGNOFF
60 (3C) VSAM Volume Data Set Updated
61 (3D) Integrated Catalog Facility Define Activity
62 (3E) VSAM Component or Cluster Opened
64 (40) VSAM Component or Cluster Status
65 (41) Integrated Catalog Facility Delete Activity
66 (42) Integrated Catalog Facility Alter Activity
80 (50) RACF/TOP SECRET Processing
81 (51) RACF Initialization
83 (53) RACF Audit Record For Data Sets
90 (5A) System Status
92 (5C) except subtypes 10, 11 OpenMVS File System Activity
102 (66) DATABASE 2 Performance

103 (67) IBM HTTP Server
110 (6E) CICS/ESA Statistics
118 (76) TCP/IP Statistics
119 (77) TCP/IP Statistics
199 (C7) TSOMON
230 (E6) ACF2 or as specified in ACFFDR (vendor-supplied default is 230)
231 (E7) TSS logs security events under this record type

CCI: CCI-000130

CCI: CCI-000131

CCI: CCI-000132

CCI: CCI-000133

CCI: CCI-000134

CCI: CCI-000135

CCI: CCI-000169

CCI: CCI-000172

CCI: CCI-001353

CCI: CCI-001487

Group ID (Vulid): V-98243

Group Title: OS000120

Rule ID: SV-107347r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000120](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must employ a session manager to manage display of the Standard Mandatory DoD Notice and Consent Banner.

Vulnerability Discussion: Display of a standardized and approved use notification before granting access to the operating system ensures privacy and security notification verbiage used is consistent with applicable federal laws, Executive Orders, directives, policies, regulations, standards, and guidance. All methods of gaining access to the system must comply with this requirement to assure that regulations are upheld.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Verify that any session manger in use displays the Standard Mandatory DoD Notice and Consent Banner before granting access to the system.

If the session manager does not display the Standard Mandatory DoD Notice and Consent Banner before granting access to the system, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure any session manger in use to display the Standard Mandatory DoD Notice and Consent Banner before granting access to the system.

CCI: CCI-000048

Group ID (Vulid): V-98247

Group Title: OS000140

Rule ID: SV-107351r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000140](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS SMF collection files (system MANx datasets or LOGSTREAM DASD) must have storage capacity to store at least one weeks worth of audit data.

Vulnerability Discussion: In order to ensure operating systems have a sufficient storage capacity in which to write the audit logs, operating systems need to be able to allocate audit record storage capacity.

The task of allocating audit record storage capacity is usually performed during initial installation of the operating system.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Review the SMF dump procedure in there system.

If the output datasets in the procedure have storage capacity to store at least one week's worth of audit data, this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Make sure output file and dump procedures allow storage capacity to store one week's worth of audit data.

CCI: CCI-001849

Group ID (Vulid): V-98249

Group Title: OS000150

Rule ID: SV-107353r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000150](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrators must develop an automated process to collect and retain SMF data.

Vulnerability Discussion: Information stored in one location is vulnerable to accidental or incidental deletion or alteration.

Off-loading is a common process in information systems with limited audit storage capacity.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator if there is an automated process is in place to collect and retain all SMF data produced on the system.

If, based on the information provided, it can be determined that an automated process is in place to collect and retain all SMF data produced on the system, this is not a finding.

If it cannot be determined this process exists and is being adhered to, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

The ISSO will ensure that an automated process is in place to collect SMF data.

Review SMF data collection and retention processes. Develop processes are automatically started to dump SMF collection files immediately upon their becoming full.

To ensure that all SMF data is collected in a timely manner, and to reduce the risk of data loss, the site will ensure that automated mechanisms are in place to collect and retain all SMF data produced on the system. Dump the SMF files (MANx) in systems based on the following guidelines:

- Dump each SMF file as it fills up during the normal course of daily processing
- Dump all remaining SMF data at the end of each processing day or -
- Establish a process using Audit logging

CCI: CCI-001851

Group ID (Vulid): V-98251

Group Title: OS000160

Rule ID: SV-107355r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000160](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS BUFUSEWARN in the SMFPRMxx must be properly set.

Vulnerability Discussion: It is critical for the appropriate personnel to be aware if a system is at risk of failing to process audit logs as required. Without this notification, the security personnel may be unaware of an impending failure of the audit capability, and system operation may be adversely affected.

Audit processing failures include software/hardware errors, failures in the audit capturing mechanisms, and audit storage capacity being reached or exceeded.

This requirement applies to each audit data storage repository (i.e., distinct information system component where audit records are stored), the centralized audit storage capacity of organizations (i.e., all audit data storage repositories combined), or both.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Refer to IEASYS00 member in SYS1.PARMLIB Concatenation. Determine proper SMFPRMxx member in SYS1.PARMLIB.

If BUFUSEWARN is set for "75" (75%) or less, this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure the BUFUSEWARN statement in SMFPRMxx to "75" (75%) or less.

CCI: CCI-000139

CCI: CCI-001855

CCI: CCI-001858

Group ID (Vulid): V-98253

Group Title: OS000170

Rule ID: SV-107357r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000170](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS NOBUFFS in SMFPRMxx must be properly set (default is MSG).

Vulnerability Discussion: It is critical that when the operating system is at risk of failing to process audit logs as required, it takes action to mitigate the failure. Audit processing failures include: software/hardware errors; failures in the audit capturing mechanisms; and audit storage capacity being reached or exceeded. Responses to audit failure depend upon the nature of the failure mode.

When availability is an overriding concern, other approved actions in response to an audit failure are as follows:

If the failure was caused by the lack of audit record storage capacity, the operating system must continue generating audit records if possible (automatically restarting the audit service if necessary), overwriting the oldest audit records in a first-in-first-out manner.

If audit records are sent to a centralized collection server and communication with this server is lost or the server fails, the operating system must queue audit records locally until communication is restored or until the audit records are retrieved manually. Upon restoration of the connection to the centralized collection server, action should be taken to synchronize the local audit data with the collection server.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Refer to IEASYS00 member in SYS1.PARMLIB Concatenation. Determine proper SMFPRMxx member in SYS1.PARMLIB.

If NOBUFFS is set to "HALT", this is not a finding.

Note: If availability is an overriding concern NOBUFFS can be set to MSG.

Fix Text:

Configure NOBUFFS to "HALT" unless availability is an overriding concern then NOBUFFS can be set to MSG.

CCI: CCI-000140

Group ID (Vulid): V-98255

Group Title: OS000180

Rule ID: SV-107359r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000180](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS SNTP daemon (SNTPD) must be active.

Vulnerability Discussion: Inaccurate time stamps make it more difficult to correlate events and can lead to an inaccurate analysis. Determining the correct time a particular event occurred on a system is critical when conducting forensic analysis and investigating system events. Sources outside the configured acceptable allowance (drift) may be inaccurate.

Synchronizing internal information system clocks provides uniformity of time stamps for information systems with multiple system clocks and systems connected over a network.

Organizations should consider endpoints that may not have regular access to the authoritative time server (e.g., mobile, teleworking, and tactical endpoints).

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

From UNIX System Services ISPF Shell navigate to ribbon select tools.

Select option 1 - Work with Processes.

If SNTP Daemon (SNTPD) is not active, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Obtain a copy of this sample procedure from SEZAINST and store it in one of your PROCLIB concatenation data sets.

Perform the following step to start SNTPD as a procedure:

Invoke the procedure using the system operator start command. The following sample, SEZAINST(SNTPD), shows how to start SNTPD as a procedure:

```
/*  
/* Sample procedure for the Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP)  
/*  
/* z/OS Communications Server Version 1 Release 13  
/* SMP/E Distribution Name: SEZAINST(EZASNPRO)  
/*  
  
/* Copyright: Licensed Materials - Property of IBM  
/* 5650-ZOS  
/* Copyright IBM Corp. 2002, 2015  
/*  
/* Status: CSV2R2  
/*
```

```
//SNTPD EXEC PGM=SNTPD,REGION=4096K,TIME=NOLIMIT,  
//PARM= / -d  
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*,DCB=(RECFM=F,LRECL=132,BLKSIZE=132)  
//SYSIN DD DUMMY  
//SYSERR DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=*,DCB=(RECFM=F,LRECL=132,BLKSIZE=132)  
//CEEDUMP DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=*
```

CCI: CCI-001891

Group ID (Vulid): V-98257

Group Title: OS000190

Rule ID: SV-107361r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000190](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS SNTP daemon (SNTPD) permission bits must be properly configured.

Vulnerability Discussion: Inaccurate time stamps make it more difficult to correlate events and can lead to an inaccurate analysis. Determining the correct time, a particular event occurred on a system is critical when conducting forensic analysis and investigating system events. Sources outside the configured acceptable allowance (drift) may be inaccurate.

Synchronizing internal information system clocks provides uniformity of time stamps for information systems with multiple system clocks and systems connected over a network.

Organizations should consider endpoints that may not have regular access to the authoritative time server (e.g., mobile, teleworking, and tactical endpoints).

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

From the ISPF Command Shell enter:

```
cd /usr/sbin
```

```
ls -al
```

If the following File permission and user Audit Bits are true, this is not a finding.

```
/usr/sbin/sntpd 1740 faf
```

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most

restrictive: 7 rwx (least restrictive)

```
6 rw3
```

```
-wx
```

```
2 -w-
```

```
5 r-x
```

```
4 r-l
```

```
--x
```

```
0 --- (most restrictive)
```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a log

for failed and successful access - no

auditing

Fix Text:

With the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, configure the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the SNTPD to conform to the specifications below:

/usr/sbin/sntpd 1740 faf

CCI: CCI-001891

Group ID (Vulid): V-98259

Group Title: OS000200

Rule ID: SV-107363r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000200](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS PARMLIB CLOCKxx must have the Accuracy PARM properly coded.

Vulnerability Discussion: Inaccurate time stamps make it more difficult to correlate events and can lead to an inaccurate analysis. Determining the correct time a particular event occurred on a system is critical when conducting forensic analysis and investigating system events.

Synchronizing internal information system clocks provides uniformity of time stamps for information systems with multiple system clocks and systems connected over a network. Organizations should consider setting time periods for different types of systems (e.g., financial, legal, or mission-critical systems).

Organizations should also consider endpoints that may not have regular access to the authoritative time server (e.g., mobile, teleworking, and tactical endpoints). This requirement is related to the comparison done every 24 hours in SRG-OS-000355 because a comparison must be done in order to determine the time difference.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Refer to the CLOCKxx member of PARMLIB.

If the ACCURACY parm is not coded, this is a finding.

If the ACCURACY parm is coded to "1000", this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Define the CLOCKxx statement to include the ACCURACY parm set to "1000".

CCI: CCI-002046

Group ID (Vulid): V-98261

Group Title: OS000210

Rule ID: SV-00000r0_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000210](#)

Rule Title: IBM RACF must define UACC of NONE on all profiles.

Vulnerability Discussion: The operating system must employ a deny-all, permit-by-exception policy to allow the execution of authorized software programs.

Responsibility: Systems Administrator IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator select Security Server Reports
- b) select Option 3 Data Set Profile
- c) Hit ENTER
- d) SORT UACC

Review all Dataset and resource profiles in the RACF database.

If any are not defined with UACC NONE, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Define each dataset and resource profile with UACC(NONE)

CCI: CCI-001774

Group ID (Vulid): V-98263

Group Title: OS000220

Rule ID: SV-107367r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000220](#)

Rule Title: PASSWORD data set and OS passwords are utilized.

Vulnerability Discussion: All protection of system resources must come from the ACP. If multiple protection mechanisms are in place, the accessibility of data, specifically under contingency plan execution, is subject to compromise.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 3;G. Record the SYSRES Volume serial number. From Administrator main Menu, go to 8;3. Enter PASSWORD in the Dsname Level field. Enter the SYSRES Volume serial number in the Volume serial field. <ENTER>.
- b) If the message NO FILES MATCH DSN LVL is returned, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the PASSWORD dataset shows up on the report, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: System programmers will ensure that the old OS Password Protection is not used and any data protected by the old OS Password technology is removed and protection is replaced by the ACP.

Review the contents of the PASSWORD data set. Ensure that any protections it provides are provided by the ACP and delete the PASSWORD data set.

Access to data sets on z/OS systems can be protected using the OS password capability of MVS. This capability has been available in MVS for many years, and its use is commonly found in data centers. Since the advent of ACPs, the use of OS passwords for file protection has diminished, and is commonly considered archaic and of little use. The use of z/OS passwords is not supported by all the ACPs.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002358

Group ID (Vulid): V-98265

Group Title: OS000230

Rule ID: SV-107369r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000230](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS System Administrator (SA) must develop a process to notify Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

Vulnerability Discussion: Once an attacker establishes access to a system, the attacker often attempts to create a persistent method of reestablishing access. One way to accomplish this is for the attacker to enable an existing disabled account. Sending notification of account enabling actions to the system administrator and ISSO is one method for mitigating this risk. Such a capability greatly reduces the risk that operating system accessibility will be negatively affected for extended periods of time and also provides logging that can be used for forensic purposes.

In order to detect and respond to events that affect user accessibility and application processing, operating systems must audit account enabling actions and, as required, notify the appropriate individuals so they can investigate the event.

To address access requirements, many operating systems can be integrated with enterprise-level authentication/access/auditing mechanisms that meet or exceed access control policy requirements.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system Administrator for the documented processes to notify the Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

If there is no documented process, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a documented process to notify the Information System Security Officers (ISSOs) of account enabling actions.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98267

Group Title: OS000240

Rule ID: SV-107371r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000240](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS Policy Agent must employ a deny-all, allow-by-exception firewall policy for allowing connections to other systems.

Vulnerability Discussion: Failure to restrict network connectivity only to authorized systems permits inbound connections from malicious systems. It also permits outbound connections that may facilitate exfiltration of DoD data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Examine the policy agent policy statements.

If it can be determined that the policy agent employs a deny-all, allow-by exception firewall policy for allowing connections to other systems this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a policy application and policy agent to employ a deny-all, allow-by-exception firewall policy for allowing connections to other systems.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-002080

Group ID (Vulid): V-98269

Group Title: OS000250

Rule ID: SV-107373r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000250](#)

Rule Title: Unsupported system software is installed and active on the system.

Vulnerability Discussion: When a vendor drops support of System Software, they no longer maintain security vulnerability patches to the software. Without vulnerability patches, it is impossible to verify that the system does not contain code which could violate the integrity of the operating system environment.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) Refer to the list of supported software products found in the SS0 Supported Software Version Release Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum.
- b) If the software products currently running on the reviewed system are at a version greater than or equal to the products listed in the z/OS STIG Addendum, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the software products currently running on the reviewed system are at a version less than the products listed in the z/OS STIG Addendum or additional products are APF authorized or access sensitive data, than this is a finding.

Fix Text: For all products that meet the following criteria:

- Uses authorized and restricted z/OS interfaces by utilizing Authorized Program Facility (APF) authorized modules or libraries.
- Require access to system datasets or sensitive information or requires special or privileged authority to run.

The ISSO will ensure that unsupported system software for the products in the above category is removed or upgraded prior to a vendor dropping support.

Authorized software which is NO longer supported is a CAT I vulnerability. The customer and site will be given 6 months to mitigate the risk, come up with a supported solution or obtain a formal letter approving such risk/software.

CCI: CCI-001764

CCI: CCI-001765

Group ID (Vulid): V-98271

Group Title: OS000260

Rule ID: SV-107375r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000260](#)

Rule Title: Non-existent or inaccessible LINKLIST libraries.

Vulnerability Discussion: LINKLIST libraries give a common access point for the general usage of modules. Many of the subsystems installed on a domain rely upon these modules for proper execution. If the list of libraries found in this LINKLIST is not properly maintained, the integrity of the operating environment is subject to compromise.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;B. Specify S next to Link List Table (All libraries) in the upper half of the screen. Specify YES for Exceptions Only and NO for all other options on the lower half of the screen. Submit the batch job and reference the report output.
- b) If there are no entries in the report with finding messages, there is NO FINDING for inaccessible LINKLIST Libraries.
- c) If there are entries in the report with finding messages, there is a FINDING for inaccessible LINKLIST libraries.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will ensure that only existing libraries are specified in the Linklist list of libraries.

Review all entries contained in the LINKLIST for the actual existence of each library. Develop a plan of action to correct deficiencies.

The Linklist is a default set of libraries that MVS searches for a specified program. This facility is used so that a user does not have to know the library names in which utility types of programs are stored. Control over membership in the Linklist is specified within the operating system. The data set SYS1.PARMLIB(LNKLSTxx) is used to specify the library names. (The xx is the suffix designated by the LNK parameter in the IEASYSxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB, or overridden by the computer operator at IPL.)

Use the following recommendations and techniques to control the exposures created by the LINKLIST facility:

- (1) Avoid inclusion of sensitive libraries in the LNKLSTxx member unless absolutely required.
- (2) The LNKLSTxx and PROGxx (LNKLST entries) members will contain only required libraries. On a semi annual basis, Software Support should review the volume serial numbers, and should verify them in accordance with the system catalog. Software Support will remove all non existent libraries. The IAO should modify and/or delete the rules associated with these libraries.

CCI: CCI-001762

CCI: CCI-001764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98273

Group Title: OS000270

Rule ID: SV-107377r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000270](#)

Rule Title: Non-existent or inaccessible Link Pack Area (LPA) libraries.

Vulnerability Discussion: LPA libraries give a common access point for the general usage of modules. Many of the subsystems installed on a domain rely upon these modules for proper execution. If the list of libraries found in this LPA member is not properly maintained, the integrity of the operating environment is subject to compromise.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;B. Specify S next to LPA List table in the upper half of the screen. Specify YES for Exceptions Only and NO for all other options on the lower half of the screen. Submit the batch job and reference the report output.
- b) If there are no entries in the report with finding messages, there is NO FINDING for inaccessible LPA List Libraries.
- c) If there are entries in the report with finding messages, there is a FINDING for inaccessible LPA List libraries.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will ensure that only existing libraries are specified in the LPA list of libraries.

Review all entries contained in the LPA members for the actual existence of each library. Develop a plan of action to correct deficiencies.

The system Link Pack Area (LPA) is the component of MVS that maintains core operating system functions resident in main storage. A security concern exists when libraries from which LPA modules are obtained require APF authorization.

Control over residence in the LPA is specified within the operating system in the following members of the data set SYS1.PARMLIB:

- LPALSTxx specifies the names of libraries to be concatenated to SYS1.LPALIB when the LPA is generated at IPL in an MVS/XA or MVS/ESA system. (The xx is the suffix designated by the LPA parameter in the

IEASYSxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB or overridden by the computer operator at system initial program load [IPL].)

- IEAFIXxx specifies the names of modules from SYS1.SVCLIB, the LPALSTxx concatenation, and the LNKSTxx concatenation that are to be temporarily fixed in central storage in the Fixed LPA (FLPA) for

the duration of an IPL. (The xx is the suffix designated by the FIX parameter in the IEASYSxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB or overridden by the computer operator at IPL.)

- IEALPAxx specifies the names of modules that will be loaded from the following:

- ? SYS1.SVCLIB

- ? The LPALSTxx concatenation

- ? The LNKLSTxx concatenation as a temporary extension to the existing Pageable

LPA (PLPA) in the Modified LPA (MLPA) for the duration of an IPL. (The xx is the suffix designated by the MLPA parameter in the IEASYSxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB or overridden by the computer operator at IPL.)

Use the following recommendations and techniques to control the exposures created by the LPA facility:

- (1) The LPALSTxx, IEAFIXxx, and IEALPAxx members will contain only required libraries. On a semi annual basis, Software Support should review the volume serial numbers, and should verify them in accordance with the system catalog. Software Support will remove all non existent libraries. The IAO should modify and/or delete the rules associated with these libraries.

CCI: CCI-001762

CCI: CCI-001764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98275

Group Title: OS000280

Rule ID: SV-107379r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000280](#)

Rule Title: Inaccessible APF libraries defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: If a library designated by an APF entry does not exist on the volume specified, a library of the same name may be placed on this volume and inherit APF authorization. This could allow the introduction of modules which bypass security and violate the integrity of the operating system environment.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

- a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;B. Specify S next to APF table in the upper half of the screen. Specify YES for Exceptions Only and NO for all other options on the lower half of the screen. Submit the batch job and reference the report output.
- b) If there are no entries in the report with finding messages, there is NO FINDING for inaccessible APF Libraries.
- c) If there are entries in the report with finding messages, there is a FINDING for inaccessible APF libraries.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will ensure that only existing libraries are specified in the APF list of libraries. Review the entire list of APF authorized libraries and remove those which are no longer valid designations.

(2) The IEAAPFxx members will contain only required libraries. On a semi annual basis, Software Support should review the volume serial numbers, and should verify them in accordance with the system catalog. Software Support will remove all non existent libraries. The IAO should modify and/or delete the rules associated with these libraries.

CCI: CCI-000381

CCI: CCI-001762

CCI: CCI-002283

Group ID (Vulid): V-98277

Group Title: OS000290

Rule ID: SV-107381r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000290](#)

Rule Title: Inapplicable PPT entries have not been invalidated.

Vulnerability Discussion: If invalid or inapplicable PPT entries exist, a venue is provided for the introduction of trojan horse modules with security bypass capabilities.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;A. Specify YES for Perform Module Search, YES for Exceptions Only, and NO for Sort Criteria. Submit the batch job and reference the report output.

b) Review report for any entries with message VSA334R .

1. If any of the entries in the report that have message VSA334R associated with them have any of the following settings, then there is a FINDING:

- a. Bypass password protection: Yes
- b. No Dataset Integrity? Yes
- c. Protect Key (if required): 00-07

2. If ALL of the entries in the report that have message VSA334R associated with them DO NOT have any of the following settings, then there is NO FINDING:

- a. Bypass password protection: Yes
- b. No Dataset Integrity? Yes
- c. Protect Key (if required): 00-07

Fix Text: The systems programmer will ensure that any invalid entries in the PPT via IEFSDPPT module or invalid entries in the SCHED PPT are nullified by (a) nullifying the invalid IEFSDPPT entry ensuring that there is a corresponding SCHED entry which confers no special attributes, or (b) removing the SCHED PPT entry which is no longer valid if it only exists in this member.

Review the PPT and ensure that all entries associated with non-existent or inapplicable modules are invalidated. As applicable, either: (a) nullify the invalid IEFSDPPT entry by ensuring that there is a corresponding SCHED entry which confers no special attributes, or (b) remove the SCHED PPT entry which is no longer valid.

Some programs require extraordinary privileges not normally permitted by the operating system. The Program Properties Table (PPT) contains the names and properties of these special programs. Programs in the PPT can bypass security software mechanisms such as password protection. Only programs that require special authorizations are coded in the PPT.

The PPT is maintained differently depending upon the level of MVS. Use the following recommendations and techniques to provide protection for the PPT:

- (1) As part of standard MVS maintenance, systems programming personnel will review the IEFSDPPT module and all programs that IBM has, by default, placed in the PPT to validate their applicability to the execution system. Please refer to the IBM z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference documentation for the version and release of z/OS installed at the individual site for the actual contents of the default IEFSDPPT
- (2) Modules for products not in use on the system will have their special privileges explicitly revoked. Do this by placing a PPT entry for each module in the SYS1.PARMLIB(SCHEDxx) member, specifying no special privileges. The PPT entry for each overridden program will be in the following format, accepting the default (unprivileged) values for the sub parameters:

PPT PGMNAME(<program name>)

- (3) The Software Support team will assemble documentation regarding these PPT entries, and the IAO will keep it on file. Include the following in the documentation:

- The product and release for which the PPT entry was made
- The last date this entry was reviewed to authenticate status- The reason the module's privileges are being revoked

CCI: CCI-000381

Group ID (Vulid): V-98279

Group Title: OS000300

Rule ID: SV-107383r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000300](#)

Rule Title: Site must have a formal migration plan for removing or upgrading OS systems software prior to the date the vendor drops security patch support.

Vulnerability Discussion: Vendors' code may contain vulnerabilities that may be exploited to cause denial of service or to violate the integrity of the system or data on the System. Most vendors develop patches to correct these vulnerabilities. When vendors' products become unsupported, the creation of these patches cease leaving the system exposed to any future vulnerabilities not patched. Without a documented migration plan established to monitor system software versions and releases unsupported software may be allowed to run on the system.

Responsibility: Security Manager

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

- a) Check with the Systems programmer to make sure that documented procedures exist to monitor the software products in SS0 Supported Software Version Release Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum. to verify dates it will become unsupported and to notify management to start procedures to upgrade to supported versions of the products before that date.
- b) If documented procedures exist to monitor products in SS0 Supported Software Version Release Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum for dates they will become unsupported and to notify management to upgrade to supported versions of the products this is not a finding.
- c) If documented procedures do not exist to monitor products in SS0 Supported Software Version Release Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum for dates they will become unsupported and to notify management to upgrade to supported versions of the products this is a finding.

Note: If product support is provided through an outside group, verify that they have a process to notify site of unsupported software.

Fix Text: The ISSO/ISSM will verify that a process is documented and followed for unsupported software.

CCI: CCI-000409

CCI: CCI-001225

CCI: CCI-001227

CCI: CCI-002606

CCI: CCI-002615

CCI: CCI-002617

Group ID (Vulid): V-98281

Group Title: OS000310

Rule ID: SV-107385r1_rule

Severity: CAT III

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000310](#)

Rule Title: Duplicated sensitive utilities and/or programs exist in APF libraries.

Vulnerability Discussion: Modules designated as sensitive utilities have the ability to significantly modify the operating system environment. Duplication of these modules causes an exposure by making it extremely difficult to track modifications to them. This could allow for the execution of invalid or trojan horse versions of these utilities.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1

Check Content:

a) From Analyzer main Menu, go to 4;B. Specify S next to APF tables in the upper half of the screen. Specify YES for Duplicate Module Analysis and NO for all other options on the lower half of the screen. Submit the batch job and reference the report output. Review the Duplicate Module Analysis section of the report.

b) If duplicate APF modules exist, compare the duplicates to the modules specified below:

1.The following list contains Sensitive Utilities that will be checked.

AHLGTF
AMASPZAP
AMAZAP
AMDIOCP
AMZIOCP
BLSROPTR
CSQJU003
CSQJU004
CSQUCVX
CSQUTIL
CSQ1LOGP
DEBE
DITTO
FDRZAPOP
GIMSMP
HHLGTF
ICKDSF

ICPIOCP
IDCSC01
IEHINITT
IFASMFD
IGWSPZAP

IHLGTF
IMASPZAP
IND\$FILE
IOPIOCP
IXPIOCP
IYPIOCP
IZPIOCP
WHOIS
L052INIT
TMSCOPY
TMSFORMAT
TMSLBLPR
TMSMULV
TMSREMOV
TMSTPNIT
TMSUDSNB

c) If none of the sensitive utilities are duplicated, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the sensitive utilities are duplicated, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure that duplicate sensitive utility(ies) and/or program(s) do not exist in APFauthorized libraries. Identify all versions of the sensitive utilities contained in APF-authorized libraries listed in the above check. In cases where duplicates exist, ensure no exposure has been created and written justification has been filed with the IAO.

(3) Before a library and a volume serial number are added to IEAAPFxx and PROGxx, the IAO will protect the data set from unauthorized access. Systems programming personnel will specify the requirements for users needing read or execute access to this library. Comparisons among all the APF libraries will be done to ensure that an exposure is not created by the existence of identically named modules. Address any sensitive utility concerns with the IAO, so that the function can be restricted as required. The IAO will build the appropriate protection into the ACP.

CCI: CCI-001762

CCI: CCI-002283

Group ID (Vulid): V-98283

Group Title: OS000320

Rule ID: SV-107387r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000320](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS systems requiring data at rest protection must properly employ IBM DS8880 for full disk encryption for classified systems.

Vulnerability Discussion: Use of weak or untested encryption algorithms undermines the purposes of utilizing encryption to protect data. The operating system must implement cryptographic modules adhering to the higher standards approved by the federal government since this provides assurance they have been tested and validated.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Determine if IBM's DS880 Disks are in use.

If they are not in use for systems that require data at rest, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Employ IBM's DS8880 hardware to ensure full disk encryption.

CCI: CCI-002450

Group ID (Vulid): V-98285

Group Title: OS000330

Rule ID: SV-107389r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000330](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS systems requiring data-at-rest protection must properly employ IBM DS8880 for full disk encryption.

Vulnerability Discussion: Information at rest refers to the state of information when it is located on a secondary storage device (e.g., disk drive and tape drive, when used for backups) within an operating system.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Determine if IBM's DS880 Disks are in use.

If they are not in use for systems that require data at rest, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Employ IBM's DS8880 hardware to ensure full disk encryption.

CCI: CCI-001199

Group ID (Vulid): V-98287

Group Title: OS000340

Rule ID: SV-107391r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000340](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must implement cryptographic mechanisms to prevent unauthorized modification of all information at rest on all operating system components.

Vulnerability Discussion: Operating systems handling data requiring data at rest protections must employ cryptographic mechanisms to prevent unauthorized disclosure and modification of the information at rest.

Satisfies: SRG-OS-000404-GPOS-00183, SRG-OS-000405-GPOS-00184

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Determine if IBM's DS880 Disks are in use.

If they are not in use for systems that require data at rest, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Employ IBM's DS8880 hardware to ensure full disk encryption.

CCI: CCI-002475

CCI: CCI-002476

Group ID (Vulid): V-98289

Group Title: OS000350

Rule ID: SV-107393r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000350](#)

Rule Title: Sensitive and critical system data sets exist on shared DASD.

Vulnerability Discussion: Any time a sensitive or critical system data set is allocated on a shared DASD device, it is critical to validate that it is properly protected on any additional systems that are sharing that device. Without proper review and adequate restrictions to access of these data sets on all systems sharing them, can lead to corruption, integrity and availability of the operating system, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer

IAControls: DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECAN-1, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

- a) To get a list of all shared DASD:
 - From Analyzer main menu, select option 4;O (DASD Analysis). This will generate a report of all DASD with a flag showing if it is shareable or not.
 - On the VOLUME ANALYSIS menu that is presented, enter YES next to VTOC Analysis so that the list of datasets on each volume will be displayed.
- b) Check the VTOC list of datasets for any critical or sensitive datasets (such as APF, LINKLIST, LPA, Catalog or Product-type Data sets).
- c) The IAO and/or Systems programming personnel must confirm that there is a justification for having these data sets on shared DASD and that there is justification for the systems that have access to the shared DASD to access the critical/sensitive data sets that may be on them.
- d) If (c) is true there is NO FINDING.
- e) If (c) is not true there is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The System programming and system configuration personnel will review the list of shared DASD. Validate that identified volumes of shared DASD are still valid within the following.

HMC

VM

z/OS

If the shared volume(s) are valid and systems having access to these shared volume(s) are valid, map disk/VTOC list to obtain data sets on the shared volume(s). From this list obtain a list of sensitive and critical system data sets that are found on the shared volume(s). Ensure that the data sets are justified to be shared on the system and to reside on the shared volume(s).

The IAO will review all access requirements to validate that sensitive and critical system data sets are protected from unauthorized access across all systems that have access to the shared volume(s). Protecting the data set(s) whether the data set(s) are used or not used on the systems that have the shared volume(s) available to them.

CCI: CCI-000099

CCI: CCI-001090

CCI: CCI-001414

Group ID (Vulid): V-98291

Group Title: OS000360

Rule ID: SV-107395r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000360](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS Policy Agent must contain a policy that protects against or limits the effects of denialof-service (DoS) attacks by ensuring the operating system is implementing rate-limiting measures o

Vulnerability Discussion: DoS is a condition when a resource is not available for legitimate users. When this occurs, the organization either cannot accomplish its mission or must operate at degraded capacity.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Examine the Policy Agent policy statements.

If it can be determined that policy that protects against or limits the effects of denial-of-service (DoS) attacks by ensuring the operating system is implementing rate-limiting measures on impacted network interfaces, this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop Policy application and policy agent to protect against or limit the effects of denial-of-service (DoS) attacks by ensuring the operating system is implementing rate-limiting measures on impacted network interfaces.

CCI: CCI-002385

Group ID (Vulid): V-98293

Group Title: OS000370

Rule ID: SV-107397r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000370](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS Policy Agent must contain a policy that manages excess capacity, bandwidth, or other redundancy to limit the effects of information flooding types of denial-of-service (DoS) attacks.

Vulnerability Discussion: DoS is a condition when a resource is not available for legitimate users. When this occurs, the organization either cannot accomplish its mission or must operate at degraded capacity.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Examine the Policy Agent policy statements.

If it can be determined that there are policy statements that manages excess capacity, this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop Policy application and Policy agent to manage excess capacity.

CCI: CCI-001095

Group ID (Vulid): V-98295

Group Title: OS000400

Rule ID: SV-107399r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000400](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS must employ a session manager that conceals, via the session lock, information previously visible on the display with a publicly viewable image.

Vulnerability Discussion: A session lock is a temporary action taken when a user stops work and moves away from the immediate physical vicinity of the information system but does not log out because of the temporary nature of the absence.

The session lock is implemented at the point where session activity can be determined. The operating system session lock event must include an obfuscation of the display screen so as to prevent other users from reading what was previously displayed.

Publicly viewable images can include static or dynamic images, for example, patterns used with screen savers, photographic images, solid colors, a clock, a battery life indicator, or a blank screen, with the additional caveat that none of the images convey sensitive information.

Responsibility: Systems Prorammer

IAControls: n/a

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the configuration parameters for the session manager in use.

If there is no session manager in use, this is a finding.

If the session manager is not configure to conceal, via the session lock, information previously visible on the display with a publicly viewable image, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure the session manager to conceal, via the session lock, information previously visible on the display with a publicly viewable image.

CCI: CCI-000060

Group ID (Vulid): V-98297

Group Title: OS000410

Rule ID: SV-107401r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000410](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must employ a session manager to manage session lock after a 15-minute period of inactivity.

Vulnerability Discussion: A session time-out lock is a temporary action taken when a user stops work and moves away from the immediate physical vicinity of the information system but does not log out because of the temporary nature of the absence. Rather than relying on the user to manually lock their operating system session prior to vacating the vicinity, operating systems need to be able to identify when a user's session has idled and take action to initiate the session lock.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the configuration parameters for the session manager in use.

If there is no session manager in use, this is a finding.

If the session manager is not configured to initiate session lock after a 15-minute period of inactivity, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure the session manager to initiate a session lock after a 15-minute period of inactivity.

CCI: CCI-000057

Group ID (Vulid): V-98299

Group Title: OS000420

Rule ID: SV-107403r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000420](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must employ a session for users to directly initiate a session lock for all connection types.

Vulnerability Discussion: The session lock is implemented at the point where session activity can be determined. Rather than be forced to wait for a period of time to expire before the user session can be locked, operating systems need to provide users with the ability to manually invoke a session lock so users may secure their session should the need arise for them to temporarily vacate the immediate physical vicinity.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the configuration parameters for the session manager in use.

If there is no session manager in use, this is a finding.

If the session manager in use does not allow users to directly initiate a session lock for all connection types, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to offload SMF files to a different system or media than the system being audited.

CCI: CCI-000058

Group ID (Vulid): V-98301

Group Title: OS000430

Rule ID: SV-107405r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000430](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must employ a session manager to manage retaining a users session lock until that user reestablishes access using established identification and authentication procedures.

Vulnerability Discussion: A session lock is a temporary action taken when a user stops work and moves away from the immediate physical vicinity of the information system but does not want to log out because of the temporary nature of the absence.

The session lock is implemented at the point where session activity can be determined.

Regardless of where the session lock is determined and implemented, once invoked, the session lock must remain in place until the user reauthenticates. No other activity aside from reauthentication must unlock the system.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the configuration parameters for the session manager in use.

If there is no session manager in use this is a finding.

If the session manager is not configured to retain a user's session lock until that user reestablishes access using established identification and authentication procedures, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure the session manager to retain a user's session lock until that user reestablishes access using established identification and authentication procedures.

CCI: CCI-000056

Group ID (Vulid): V-98303

Group Title: OS000440

Rule ID: SV-107407r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000440](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to remove or disable temporary user accounts after 72 hours.

Vulnerability Discussion: Emergency accounts are privileged accounts that are established in response to crisis situations where the need for rapid account activation is required. Therefore, emergency account activation may bypass normal account authorization processes. If these accounts are automatically disabled, system maintenance during emergencies may not be possible, thus adversely affecting system availability.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to automatically remove or disable temporary user accounts after 72 hours.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to automatically remove or disable temporary user accounts after 72 hours.

CCI: CCI-000016

Group ID (Vulid): V-98305

Group Title: OS000450

Rule ID: SV-107409r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000450](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to remove or disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

Vulnerability Discussion: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to remove or disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to automatically remove or disable emergency accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to remove or disable emergency user accounts after the crisis is resolved or 72 hours.

CCI: CCI-001682

Group ID (Vulid): V-98307

Group Title: OS000460

Rule ID: SV-107411r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000460](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to notify designated personnel if baseline configurations are changed in an unauthorized manner.

Vulnerability Discussion: Unauthorized changes to the baseline configuration could make the system vulnerable to various attacks or allow unauthorized access to the operating system. Changes to operating system configurations can have unintended side effects, some of which may be relevant to security.

Detecting such changes and providing an automated response can help avoid unintended, negative consequences that could ultimately affect the security state of the operating system. The operating system's IMO/ISSO and SAs must be notified via email and/or monitoring system trap when there is an unauthorized modification of a configuration item.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to notify designated personnel if baseline configurations are changed in an unauthorized manner.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to notify designated personnel if baseline configurations are changed in an unauthorized manner.

CCI: CCI-001744

Group ID (Vulid): V-98309

Group Title: OS000470

Rule ID: SV-107413r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000470](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to provide an audit reduction capability that supports on-demand reporting requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: If a maintenance session or connection remains open after maintenance is completed, it may be hijacked by an attacker and used to compromise or damage the system.

Some maintenance and test tools are either standalone devices with their own operating systems or are applications bundled with an operating system.

Nonlocal maintenance and diagnostic activities are those activities conducted by individuals communicating through a network, either an external network (e.g., the Internet) or an internal network. Local maintenance and diagnostic activities are those activities carried out by individuals physically present at the information system or information system component and not communicating across a network connection.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to provide an audit reduction capability that supports on-demand reporting requirements.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to provide an audit reduction capability that supports on-demand reporting requirements.

CCI: CCI-001876

Group ID (Vulid): V-98311

Group Title: OS000480

Rule ID: SV-107415r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000480](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to terminate all sessions and network connections related to nonlocal maintenance when nonlocal maintenance is completed.

Vulnerability Discussion: Configuring the operating system to implement organization-wide security implementation guides and security checklists ensures compliance with federal standards and establishes a common security baseline across DoD that reflects the most restrictive security posture consistent with operational requirements.

Configuration settings are the set of parameters that can be changed in hardware, software, or firmware components of the system that affect the security posture and/or functionality of the system. Security-related parameters are those parameters impacting the security state of the system, including the parameters required to satisfy other security control requirements. Security-related parameters include, for example: registry settings; account, file, directory permission settings; and settings for functions, ports, protocols, services, and remote connections.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to terminate all sessions and network connections related to nonlocal maintenance when nonlocal maintenance is completed.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to terminate all sessions and network connections related to nonlocal maintenance when nonlocal maintenance is completed.

CCI: CCI-000879

Group ID (Vulid): V-98313

Group Title: OS000490

Rule ID: SV-107417r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000490](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to remove all software components after updated versions have been installed.

Vulnerability Discussion: Previous versions of software components that are not removed from the information system after updates have been installed may be exploited by adversaries. Some information technology products may remove older versions of software automatically from the information system.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to remove all software components after updated versions have been installed.

If there is no procedure, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to remove all software components after updated versions have been installed.

CCI: CCI-002617

Group ID (Vulid): V-98315

Group Title: OS000500

Rule ID: SV-107419r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000500](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must shut down the information system, restart the information system, and/or notify the system administrator when anomalies in the operation of any security functions are discovered.

Vulnerability Discussion: If anomalies are not acted upon, security functions may fail to secure the system.

Security function is defined as the hardware, software, and/or firmware of the information system responsible for enforcing the system security policy and supporting the isolation of code and data on which the protection is based. Security functionality includes, but is not limited to, establishing system accounts, configuring access authorizations (i.e., permissions, privileges), setting events to be audited, and setting intrusion detection parameters.

Notifications provided by information systems include messages to local computer consoles, and/or hardware indications, such as lights.

This capability must take into account operational requirements for availability for selecting an appropriate response. The organization may choose to shut down or restart the information system upon security function anomaly detection.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to shut down the information system, restart the information system, and/or notify the system administrator when anomalies occur.

If a procedure does not exist, this is a finding.

If the procedure does not properly shut down the information system, restart the information system, and/or notify the system administrator when anomalies occur, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to shut down the information system, restart the information system, and/or notify the system administrator when anomalies occur.

CCI: CCI-002702

Group ID (Vulid): V-98317

Group Title: OS000510

Rule ID: SV-107421r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [OS000510](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS system administrator must develop a procedure to offload SMF files to a different system or media than the system being audited.

Vulnerability Discussion: Information stored in one location is vulnerable to accidental or incidental deletion or alteration.

Off-loading is a common process in information systems with limited audit storage capacity.

Responsibility: System Administrator

IAControls: N/A Check Content:

Ask the system administrator for the procedure to offload SMF files to a different system or media than the system being audited.

If the procedure does not exist, this is a finding.

Fix Text:

Develop a procedure to offload SMF files to a different system or media than the system being audited.

CCI: CCI-001851

Group ID (Vulid): V-98319

Group Title: SH000010

Rule ID: SV-107423r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000010](#)

Rule Title: SMF recording options for the SSH daemon must be configured to write SMF records for all eligible events.

Vulnerability Discussion: SMF data collection is the basic unit of tracking of all system functions and actions. Included in this tracking data are the audit trails from each of the ACPs. If the control options for the recording of this tracking are not properly maintained, then accountability cannot be monitored, and its use in the execution of a contingency plan could be compromised.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Vanguard Administrator, choose Option 14; Vanguard Unix Manager, then Option 2; Unix File Manager.
- b) Locate the SSH daemon configuration file. This file may be found in the /etc/ssh/ directory.
- c) If SSH Daemon is not active, there is NO FINDING.
- d) Examine SSH daemon configuration file.
 1. If Server SMF is not coded with ServerSMF TYPE119_U83, this is a FINDING.
 2. If Server SMF is commented out, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Configure the SERVERSMF statement in the SSH Daemon configuration file to TYPE119_U83.

Group ID (Vulid): V-98321

Group Title: SH000020

Rule ID: SV-107425r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000020](#)

Rule Title: The SSH daemon must be configured to use a FIPS 140-2 compliant cryptographic algorithm.

Vulnerability Discussion: Use of weak or untested encryption algorithms undermines the purposes of utilizing encryption to protect data. Cryptographic modules must adhere to the higher standards approved by the federal government since this provides assurance they have been tested and validated.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Vanguard Administrator, choose Option 14; Vanguard Unix Manager, then Option 2; Unix File Manager.
- b) Locate the SSH daemon configuration file. This file may be found in the /etc/ssh/ directory.
- c) Examine SSH daemon configuration file sshd_config.
 1. If there are no Ciphers lines or the ciphers list contains any cipher not starting with 3des or aes, this is a FINDING.
 2. If the Macs line is not configured to hmac-shal or greater, this is a FINDING.
- d) Examine the z/OS-specified sshd server system-wide configuration zos_sshd_config.
 1. If any of the following is untrue, this is a FINDING.
 - i. FTPSMODE YES
 - ii. CipherSource ICSF
 - iii. MACsSource ICSF

Fix Text: Edit the SSH daemon configuration and remove any ciphers not starting with "3des" or "aes". If necessary, add a "Ciphers" line using FIPS 140-2 compliant algorithms.

Configure for message authentication to MACs "hmac-sha1" or greater.

Edit the z/OS-specific sshd server system-wide configuration file configuration as follows:

FTPSMODE YES

CiphersSource ICSF

MACsSource ICSF

Group ID (Vulid): V-98323

Group Title: SH000030

Rule ID: SV-107427r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000030](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS must implement DoD-approved encryption to protect the confidentiality of remote access sessions.

Vulnerability Discussion: Use of weak or untested encryption algorithms undermines the purposes of utilizing encryption to protect data. Cryptographic modules must adhere to the higher standards approved by the federal government since this provides assurance they have been tested and validated.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Locate the SSH daemon configuration file, which may be found in /etc/ssh/ directory.

b) Examine SSH daemon configuration file. sshd_config

If there are no "Ciphers" lines or the ciphers list contains any cipher not starting with "3des" or "aes", this is a finding.

If the MACs line is not configured to "hmac-sha1" or greater this is a finding.

Examine the z/OS-specific sshd server system-wide configuration:

zos_sshd_config

If any of the following is untrue, this is a finding.

FIPSMODE=YES

CiphersSource=ICSF

MACsSource=ICSF

Fix Text:

Edit the SSH daemon configuration and remove any ciphers not starting with "3des" or "aes". If necessary, add a "Ciphers" line using FIPS 140-2 compliant algorithms

Configure for message authentication to MACs "hmac-sha1" or greater.

Edit the z/OS-specific sshd server system-wide configuration file configuration as follows:

FIPSMODE=YES

CiphersSource=ICSF

MACsSource=ICSF

Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(SERVAUTH)

GENCMD(SERVAUTH).

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-001453

Group ID (Vulid): V-98325

Group Title: SH000040

Rule ID: SV-107429r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000040](#)

Rule Title: The SSH daemon must be configured with the Department of Defense (DoD) logon banner.

Vulnerability Discussion: Failure to display the DoD logon banner prior to a logon attempt will negate legal proceedings resulting from unauthorized access to system resources.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Vanguard Administrator, choose Option 14; Vanguard Unix Manager, then Option 2; Unix File Manager.
- b) Locate the SSH daemon configuration file. This file may be found in the /etc/ssh/ directory.
- c) If SSH Daemon is not active, there is NO FINDING.
- d) Examine SSH daemon configuration file.
 1. If Banner statement is missing or configured to none, this is a FINDING.
 2. Ensure that the contents of the file specified on the banner statement contain a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. If there is any deviation, this is a FINDING.

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

-This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

-Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or

services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

Fix Text: Configure the banner statement to a file that contains the Department of Defense (DoD) logon banner.

Ensure that the contents of the file specified on the banner statement contain a logon banner.

The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer.

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

- The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

- At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

- Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

- This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

- Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

Group ID (Vulid): V-98327

Group Title: SH000050

Rule ID: SV-83851r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000050](#)

Rule Title: The SSH daemon must be configured to only use the SSHv2 protocol.

Vulnerability Discussion: SSHv1 is not a DoD-approved protocol and has many well-known vulnerability exploits. Exploits of the SSH daemon could provide immediate root access to the system.

Responsibility: N/A

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

- a) From Vanguard Administrator, choose Option 14; Vanguard Unix Manager, then Option 2; Unix File Manager.
- b) Locate the SSH daemon configuration file. This file may be found in the /etc/ssh/ directory.
- c) If SSH Daemon is not active, there is NOFINDING.
- d) Examine SSH daemon configuration file.
 1. If variable 'Protocol 2' is defined, there is NO FINDING.
 2. If variable 'Protocol' is defined in a leading comment or has a value other than 2, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Edit the sshd_config file and set the "Protocol" setting to "2".

Group ID (Vulid): V-98329

Group Title: SH000060

Rule ID: SV-107433r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SH000060](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS, for PKI-based authentication, must use the ESM for key management.

Vulnerability Discussion: Without mapping the certificate used to authenticate to the user account, the ability to determine the identity of the individual user or group will not be available for forensic analysis.

Responsibility: N/A IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

From the ISPF Command Shell enter:

OMVS

enter find / -name

*.kdb

If any files are found, this is a finding

Fix Text:

Define all Keys/Certificates to the security database.

Remove the all .kdb files.

CCI: CCI-000187

Group ID (Vulid): V-98331

Group Title: SL000010

Rule ID: SV-107435r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SL000010](#)

Rule Title: The permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Syslog daemon component will be configured properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: HFS directories and files of the Syslog daemon provide the configuration and executable properties of this product. Failure to properly secure these objects could lead to unauthorized access. This exposure may result in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECTM-1, ECTM-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Syslog daemon component are configured according to the settings in the following table:

SYSLOG DAEMON HFS OBJECT SECURITY SETTINGS

DIRECTORY or FILE PERMISSION BITS USERAUDIT BITS

/usr/sbin/syslogd	1740	fff
/etc/syslog.conf	0744	faf

[Output log file defined in the configuration file]

0744	fff
------	-----

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14 review the files listed in the table above.

b) If the HFS permission bits and user audit bits for each directory and file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in this table, there is NO FINDING.

NOTES:

The /usr/sbin/syslogd object is a symbolic link to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/syslogd. The permission and user audit bits on the target of the symbolic link must have the required settings.

The /etc/syslog.conf file may not be the configuration file the daemon uses. It is necessary to check the script or JCL used to start the daemon to determine the actual configuration file.

For example, in /etc/rc:

```
_BPX_JOBNAME='SYSLOGD' /usr/sbin/syslogd -f /etc/syslog.conf
```

For example, in the SYSLOGD started task JCL:

```
//SYSLOGD EXEC PGM=SYSLOGD,REGION=30M,TIME=NOLIMIT
// PARM='POSIX(ON) ALL31(ON)/ -f /etc/syslogd.conf'
```

```
//SYSLOGD EXEC PGM=SYSLOGD,REGION=30M,TIME=NOLIMIT
// PARM='POSIX(ON) ALL31(ON) /-f //'SYS1.TCPPARMS(SYSLOG)''
```

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

```
7 rwx(least restrictive)
6 rw
3 -wx
2 w-
5 r-x
4 r-l--x
0 --- (most restrictive)
```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

```
f log for failed access attempts a log
for failed and successful access
-no auditing
```

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the HFS directories and files for the Syslog daemon. Ensure they conform to the specifications in the SYSLOG Daemon HFS Object Security Settings table below.

Log files should have security that prevents anyone except the syslogd process and authorized maintenance jobs from writing to or deleting them.

A maintenance process to periodically clear the log files is essential. Logging stops if the target file system becomes full.

SYSLOG Daemon HFS Object Security Settings

File	Permission Bits	User Audit Bits
/usr/sbin/syslogd	1740	fff
[Configuration File]		
/etc/syslog.conf	0744	faf
[Output log file defined in the configuration file]		
0744	fff	

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

```
7   rwx           (least restrictive)
```

```

6    rw3
-wx
2    -w-
5    r-x
4    r-l
--x
0    ---      (most restrictive)

```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

```

f    log for failed access attempts

a    log for failed and successful access
-    no auditing

```

NOTES:

The /usr/sbin/syslogd object is a symbolic link to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/syslogd. The permission and user audit bits on the target of the symbolic link must have the required settings.

The /etc/syslog.conf file may not be the configuration file the daemon uses. It is necessary to check the script or JCL used to start the daemon to determine the actual configuration file. For example, in /etc/rc:

```
_BPX_JOBNAME='SYSLOGD' /usr/sbin/syslogd -f /etc/syslog.conf
```

For example, in the SYSLOGD started task JCL:

```
//SYSLOGD EXEC PGM=SYSLOGD,REGION=30M,TIME=NOLIMIT
// PARM='POSIX(ON) ALL31(ON)/ -f /etc/syslogd.conf'
```

```
//SYSLOGD EXEC PGM=SYSLOGD,REGION=30M,TIME=NOLIMIT
// PARM='POSIX(ON) ALL31(ON) /-f /"'SYS1.TCPPARMS(SYSLOG)'"'
```

The following commands can be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```

chmod 1740 /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/syslogd
chaudit rwx=f
/usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/syslogd chmod 0744
/etc/syslog.conf chaudit w=sf,rx+f
/etc/syslog.conf chmod 0744
/log_dir/log_file chaudit rwx=f
/log_dir/log_file

```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98333

Group Title: SL000020

Rule ID: SV-107437r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SL000020](#)

Rule Title: The Syslog daemon is not started at z/OS initialization.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Syslog daemon, known as SYSLOGD, is a z/OS UNIX daemon that provides a central processing point for log messages issued by other z/OS UNIX processes. The messages may be of varying importance levels including general process information, diagnostic information, critical error notification, and audit-class information. It is important that SYSLOGD be started during the initialization phase of the z/OS system to ensure that significant messages are not lost. Failure to collect and retain audit data may contribute to the loss of accountability and hamper security audit activities.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that Syslogd is started at Z/OS system initialization.

NOTE: Syslogd may be started from the shell, a cataloged procedure (STC), or the BPXBATCH program. Additionally, other mechanisms (e.g., CONTROL-O) may be used to automatically start the Syslog daemon. To thoroughly analyze this PDI you may need to view the OS SYSLOG using SDSF, find the last IPL, and look for the initialization of Syslogd.

- a) If the Syslog daemon Syslogd is started automatically during the initialization of the z/OS system, there is NO FINDING.
- b) If (a) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the files used to initialize tasks during system IPL (e.g., /etc/rc, SYS1.PARMLIB, CONTROL-O definitions) to ensure the Syslog daemon is automatically started during z/OS system initialization.

It is important that syslogd be started during the initialization phase of the z/OS system to ensure that significant messages are not lost. As with other z/OS UNIX daemons, there is more than one way to start SYSLOGD. It can be started as a process in the /etc/rc file or as a z/OS started task.

CCI: CCI-000764

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98335

Group Title: SL000030

Rule ID: SV-107439r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SL000030](#)

Rule Title: The Syslog daemon must be properly defined and secured.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Syslog daemon, known as syslogd, is a zOS UNIX daemon that provides a central processing point for log messages issued by other zOS UNIX processes. It is also possible to receive log messages from other network-connected hosts. Some of the IBM Communications Server components that may send messages to syslog are the FTP, TFTP, zOS UNIX Telnet, DNS, and DHCP servers. The messages may be of varying importance levels including general process information, diagnostic information, critical error notification, and audit-class information. Primarily because of the potential to use this information in an audit process, there is a security interest in protecting the syslogd process and its associated data.

The Syslog daemon requires special privileges and access to sensitive resources to provide its system services. Failure to properly define and control the Syslog daemon could lead to unauthorized access. This exposure may result in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that Syslogd runs under its own user account. Specifically, it does not share the account defined for the Z/OS UNIX kernel.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that Syslogd runs with a job/started task name such as SYSLOGD that uniquely identifies it.

1) If you start SYSLOGD from MVS then ensure the following:

- a) The SYSLOG daemon userid is SYSLOGD.
- b) The SYSLOGD userid is defined as a PROTECTED userid.
- c) The SYSLOGD userid has the following z/OS OMVS attributes: UID(0)

HOME(/) PROGRAM(/bin/sh)

- d) A matching entry in the STARTED class exists mapping the SYSLOGD started proc to the SYSLOGD userid.

To do the above:

Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the SYSLOGD started task.
Document the USERID.

Using Vanguard Administrator User Profile summary mask on USERID = syslogd userid. Use the LV command and review the USERID and ensure all items are in effect for the Syslog daemon:

2) If you start SYSLOGD from /etc/rc then ensure the following:

a) The _BPX_JOBNAME environment variable is set to assign a job name of SYSLOGD.

To do the above:

You will need to locate the /etc/rc file and locate the BPX_JOBNAME in it.

c) If SYSLOGD is started from MVS then if b(1) is true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If SYSLOGD is started from within USS then if b(2) is true, there is NO FINDING.

e) If SYSLOGD is started from within MVS and b(1) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

f) If SYSLOGD is started from within USS and b(2) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO working with the systems programmer responsible for supporting IBM Comm Server will ensure that Syslog daemon runs under its own user account. Specifically, it does not share the account defined for the z/OS UNIX kernel.

The Syslog daemon userid is SYSLOGD.

The SYSLOGD userid is defined as a PROTECTED userid.

The SYSLOGD userid has UID(0), HOME(/), and PROGRAM(/bin/sh) specified in the OMVS segment.

To set up and use as an MVS Started Proc, the following sample commands are provided:

```
AU SYSLOGD NAME('stc, tcpip') NOPASSWORD NOOIDCARD DFLTGRP(STC)
OWNER(STC) DATA('Reference ISLG0020 for proper setup ')
ALU SYSLOGD DFLTGRP(stctcpx)
ALU SYSLOGD OMVS(UID(0) HOME('/') PROGRAM('/bin/sh'))
CO SYSLOGD GROUP(stctcpx) OWNER(stctcpx)
```

A matching entry mapping the SYSLOGD started proc to the SYSLOGD userid is in the STARTED resource class.

```
RDEF STARTED SYSLOGD.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ)) STDATA(USER
(SYSLOGD) GROUP(STC))
```

If /etc/rc is used to start the Syslog daemon ensure that the _BPX_JOBNAME and _BPX_USERID environment variables are assigned a value of SYSLOGD.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98337

Group Title: SM000010

Rule ID: SV-107441r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SM000010](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS DFSMS Program Resources must be properly defined and protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: To mitigate the risk of unauthorized access to sensitive information by entities that have been issued certificates by DoD-approved PKIs, all DoD systems (e.g., web servers and web portals) must be properly configured to incorporate access control methods that do not rely solely on the possession of a certificate for access. Successful authentication must not automatically give an entity access to an asset or security boundary. Authorization procedures and controls must be implemented to ensure each authenticated entity also has a validated and current authorization. Authorization is the process of determining whether an entity, once authenticated, is permitted to access a specific asset. Information systems use access control policies and enforcement mechanisms to implement this requirement.

Access control policies include: identity-based policies, role-based policies, and attribute-based policies. Access enforcement mechanisms include: access control lists, access control matrices, and cryptography. These policies and mechanisms must be employed by the application to control access between users (or processes acting on behalf of users) and objects (e.g., devices, files, records, processes, programs, and domains) in the information system.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Refer to the load modules residing in the following Load libraries to determine program resource definitions:

SYS1.DGTLLIB for DFSMSdfp/ISMF

SYS1.DGTLLIB for DFSMSdss/ISMF

SYS1.DFQLLIB for DFSMSHsm

If the installation moves these modules to another load library the installation-defined load library must be used in the program protection.

If the RACF resources are defined with a default access of NONE, this is not a finding.

If the RACF resource access authorizations restrict access to the appropriate personnel, this is not a finding.

(Refer to the chapter titled Protecting the Storage Management Subsystem in the IBM z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Guide to assist with guidance on appropriate access.)

Fix Text:

(Note: The resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product's installation guide and can be site specific.)

Refer to the chapter titled Protecting the Storage Management Subsystem in the IBM z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Guide.

Use SMS Program Resources tables to determine the resources and access requirements for SMS Program Resources. Ensure the guidelines for the resource type, resources, and/or generic equivalent are specified.

The RACF resources as designated in the table above are defined with a default access of NONE.

The RACF resource access authorizations restrict access to the appropriate personnel as designated in the table above.

The following commands are provided as a sample for implementing resource controls:

```
RDEF PROGRAM ACBFUTO2 ADDMEM('SYS1.DSF.DGTLLIB'//NOPADCHK) -  
DATA('ADDED PER SRR PDI ZSMS0012 ') -  
AUDIT(FAILURE(READ)) UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN)  
PERMIT ACBFUTO2 CLASS(PROGRAM) ID(*****)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98339

Group Title: SM000020

Rule ID: SV-107443r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SM000020](#)

Rule Title: DFSMS control data sets are not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: DFSMS control data sets provide the configuration and operational characteristics of the system-managed storage environment. Failure to properly protect these data sets may result in unauthorized access. This exposure could compromise the availability and integrity of some system services and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following item gathered from the Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS) Worksheet in the Preliminary Information Worksheets in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc:

___ 1. Provide the following DFSMS data set names:

SCDS:

ACDS:

COMMDS:

ACS:

ACDS Backup:

COMMDS Backup:

b) Generate a report for security verification using Analyzer.1. Select option 4 Batch Reports from the Analyzer main menu
2. Select option B Sensitive and Critical Data Sets Analysis
3. Enter R on line item User defined list
4. Provide a dataset name or your choice which will include the names of the data sets gathered from step a) above.

Note: This may be a sequential data set or a PDS member

5. Specify the options as listed here.

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

6. Press enter to invoke the JCL Submit Processing
7. Enter S to submit the batch report
8. Review the report for findings

c) Review the logical parmlib data sets, example:
SYS1.PARMLIB(IGDSMSxx), to identify the fully qualified file names for the following SMS data sets:

Source Control Data Set (SCDS)
Active Control Data Set (ACDS)
Communications Data Set (COMMDS)
Automatic Class Selection Routine Source Data Sets (ACS)
ACDS Backup
COMMDS Backup

d) If the RACF data set rules for the SCDS, ACDS, COMMDS, and ACS data sets restrict UPDATE and ALTER access to only Z/OS systems programming personnel, there is NO FINDING.

e) If the RACF data set rules for the SCDS, ACDS, COMMDS, and ACS data sets do not restrict UPDATE and ALTER access to only Z/OS systems programming personnel, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: b) Review the SYS1.PARMLIB(IGDSMS00) data set to identify the fully qualified file names for the following SMS data sets:

Source Control Data Set (SCDS)
Active Control Data Set (ACDS)
Communications Data Set (COMMDS)
Automatic Class Selection Routine Source Data Sets (ACS)
ACDS Backup
COMMDS Backup

The RACF data set rules for the SCDS, ACDS, COMMDS, and ACS data sets must restrict UPDATE and ALTER access to only z/OS systems programming personnel.

Note: At the discretion of the ISSM, DASD administrators are allowed UPDATE access to the control datasets.

Some example commands to implement the proper controls are shown here:

```
AD 'sys3.dfsms.mmd.commnds.***' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS3) AUDIT(ALL(READ))  
DATA('PROTECTED PER ZSMS0020')
```

```
PE 'sys3.dfsms.mmd.commnds.***' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98341

Group Title: SM000030

Rule ID: SV-107445r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SM000030](#)

Rule Title: DFSMS-related RACF classes are not active.

Vulnerability Discussion: DFSMS provides data, storage, program, and device management functions for the operating system. Some DFSMS storage administration functions allow a user to obtain a privileged status and effectively bypass all ACP data set and volume controls. Failure to properly protect DFSMS resources may result in unauthorized access. This exposure could compromise the availability and integrity of the operating system environment, system services, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

a) Generate a batch report of ACTIVE RACF CLASSES using Analyzer. Review the output.

1. Option 4 Batch Reports, from the Analyzer main menu 2. Option 1: Class Descriptor Table Analysis 3. Submit the job.

b) Verify the following are classes are ACTIVE - MGMTCLAS, STORCLAS, PROGRAM, and FACILITY resources classes.

c) Verify the following classes are RACLISTED - MGMTCLAS and STORCLAS resource classes.

d) If (b) and (c) are true, there is NO FINDING.

e) If (b) or (c) is not true, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: CLASSACT Resources

ACTIVE CLASSES lists the MGMTCLAS, STORCLAS, PROGRAM, and FACILITY resources classes.

The classes can be activated with the command:

SETR CLASSACT(MGMTCLAS STORCLAS PROGRAM FACILITY)

RACLIST CLASSES lists the MGMTCLAS and STORCLAS resource classes.

The classes can be RACLISTED with the command:

SETR RACL(MGMTCLAS STORCLAS)

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98343

Group Title: SM000040

Rule ID: SV-107447r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SM000040](#)

Rule Title: DFSMS resources must be protected in accordance with the proper security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: DFSMS provides data, storage, program, and device management functions for the operating system. Some DFSMS storage administration functions allow a user to obtain a privileged status and effectively bypass all ACP data set and volume controls. Failure to properly protect DFSMS resources may result in unauthorized access. This exposure could compromise the availability and integrity of the operating system environment, system services, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Generate a report of FACILITY class profiles beginning with STGADMIN, using the Administrator QUICK GEN utility.

1. Option 3 Security Server Reports from the Administrator main menu.
2. Option 4 General Resource Profile.
3. Under the standard masking fields

Profile: STGADMIN*

Class: FACILITY

4. Enter command option 1
5. At the resulting profile list enter command option QG6. On line 1 in the edit field enter the following:
rlist &CLASS (&PROFILE) all
7. On the command line enter GEN
8. Enter VRABATCH. This will submit a batch job. Review the report.

b) Ensure that the following items are in effect:

1. The STGADMIN.** profile in the FACILITY resource class has a

default access of NONE and grants no access at this level.

2. STGADMIN.DPDSRN.olddsname is restricted to System Programmers only.
3. The STGADMIN.IGD.ACTIVATE.CONFIGURATION is restricted to System Programmers.
4. The STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS is restricted to System Programmers and Security personnel.
5. The STGADMIN.IGG.CATALOG.SECURITY.CHANGE is defined with access of NONE and all access logged

Note: the resource STGADMIN.IGG.CATALOG.SECURITY.CHANGE can be defined with read access for migration purposes. If it is a detailed migration plan it must be documented and filed by the ISSM that determines a definite migration period. All access must be logged. At the completion of migration this resource must be configured with access = NONE.

NOTE: The following STGADMIN resource profiles may be allocated to the enduser resulting in NO FINDING:

STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.CNCURRNT
STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ADR.DUMP.CNCURRNT
STGADMIN.ADR.DUMP.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ADR.RESTORE.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ARC.ENDUSER
STGADMIN.IGG.ALTER.SMS

6. The STGADMIN resource profiles below are restricted to System programmers, DASD managers and Application Production Support Team members.
For STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT, Automated Operations can have access also.

STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL
STGADMIN.ARC.LIST
STGADMIN.ARC.QUERY
STGADMIN.ARC.REPORT
STGADMIN.DMO.CONFIG STGADMIN
STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT
STGADMIN.IFG.READVTOC
STGADMIN.IGG.DELGDG.FORCE

7. STGADMIN resource profiles are controlled using the first two high-level resource name qualifiers (as below) at a minimum and restricted to System programmers and DASD managers.

STGADMIN.ADR
STGADMIN.ANT
STGADMIN.ARC
STGADMIN.DMO
STGADMIN.ICK
STGADMIN.IDC
STGADMIN.IFG
STGADMIN.IGG
STGADMIN.IGWSHCDS

8. The following Storage Administrator functions are controlled using the first three high-level resource name qualifiers at a minimum; restricted to System programmers and DASD managers and all access is logged.

STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.BUILDSA
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.COMPRESS
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.COPY
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.COPY.DELETE
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.COPY.RENAME
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.DEFRAG
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.DUMP

STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.DUMP.DELETE
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.PRINT
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.RELEASE
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.RESTORE
STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.RESTORE.RENAME

9. All access to the following STGADMIN resources is logged:

STGADMIN.DPDSRN.olddsname
STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS
STGADMIN.IGD.ACTIVATE.CONFIGURATION

c) If all items in (b) above are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will work with the systems programmer to verify that the following are properly specified in the ACP.

(Note: The resources and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product s installation guide and can be site specific.)

Below is listed the access requirements for SMS Resources. Ensure the guidelines for the resources and/or generic equivalent are followed.

The RACF resources are defined with a default access of NONE.

The RACF resource rules for the resources specify UACC(NONE) and NOWARNING.

Ensure that no access is given to the high-level STGADMIN resource.

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

Ensure no access is given to resource STGADMIN.IGG.CATALOG.SECURITY.CHANGE.

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.IGG.CATALOG.SECURITY.CHANGE OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

The STGADMIN.DPDSRN.olddsname is restricted to System Programmers and all access is logged.

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.DPDSRN.olddsname OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

PE STGADMIN.DPDSRN.olddsname CL(FACILITY) ID(syspautd)

The STGADMIN.IGD.ACTIVATE.CONFIGURATION is restricted to System Programmers and all access is logged.

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.IGD.ACTIVATE.CONFIGURATION OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IGD.ACTIVATE.CONFIGURATION CL(FACILITY) ID(syspautd)
```

The STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS is restricted to System Programmers and Security personnel and all access is logged.

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS CL(FACILITY) ID(secdaudt)
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS CL(FACILITY) ID(secdaudt)
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IGG.DEFDEL.UALIAS CL(FACILITY) ID(syspautd)
```

The following resources and prefixes may be available to the end-user.

```
STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.CNCURRNT
STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.FLASHCPY
STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ADR.DUMP.CNCURRNT
STGADMIN.ADR.DUMP.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ADR.RESTORE.TOLERATE.ENQF
STGADMIN.ARC.ENDUSER.
STGADMIN.IGG.ALTER.SMS
```

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.CNCURRNT.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
```

```
PE STGADMIN.ADR.COPY.CNCURRNT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(endusers)
```

The following resource is restricted to Application Production Support Team members, Automated Operations, DASD managers, and System programmers.

```
STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT
```

Example:

```
RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(appsaudt)
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(autoaudt)
```

```
PE STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasbaudt)
```

PE STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasdaudt)
PE STGADMIN.IDC.DCOLLECT.** CL(FACILITY) ID(syspauudt)

The following resources are restricted to Application Production Support Team members, DASD managers, and System programmers.

STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL
STGADMIN.ARC.LIST
STGADMIN.ARC.QUERY
STGADMIN.ARC.REPORT
STGADMIN.DMO.CONFIG
STGADMIN.IFG.READVTOC
STGADMIN.IGG.DELGDG.FORCE

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))

PE STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL.** CL(FACILITY) ID(appsaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasbaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasdaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ARC.CANCEL.** CL(FACILITY) ID(syspauudt)

The following resource prefixes, at a minimum, are restricted to DASD managers and System programmers.

STGADMIN.ADR
STGADMIN.ANT
STGADMIN.ARC
STGADMIN.DMO
STGADMIN.ICK
STGADMIN.IDC
STGADMIN.IFG
STGADMIN.IGG
STGADMIN.IGWSHCDS

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.ADR.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))

PE STGADMIN.ADR.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasbaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ADR.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasdaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ADR.** CL(FACILITY) ID(syspauudt)

The following Storage Administrator functions prefix is restricted to DASD managers and System programmers and all access is logged.

STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.

Example:

RDEF FACILITY STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.** OWNER(ADMIN)
UACC(NONE) AUDIT(ALL(READ))

PE STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasbaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.** CL(FACILITY) ID(dasdaudt)
PE STGADMIN.ADR.STGADMIN.** CL(FACILITY) ID(syspauDt)

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98345

Group Title: SM000050

Rule ID: SV-107449r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [SM000050](#)

Rule Title: SYS(x).PARMLIB(IGDSMSxx), SMS parameter settings are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Configuration properties of DFSMS are specified in various members of the system parmlib concatenation (e.g., SYS1.PARMLIB). Statements within these PDS members provide the execution, operational, and configuration characteristics of the system-managed storage environment. Missing or inappropriate configuration values may result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure could potentially compromise the availability and integrity of some system services and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Review the logical parmlib data sets, example: SYS1.PARMLIB(IGDSMSxx), for the following SMS parameter settings:

Parameter Key

SMS

ACDS(ACDS data set name)

COMMDS(COMMDS data set name)

b) If the required parameters are defined, there is NO FINDING.

c) If the required parameters are not defined, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The Systems programmer will review the DFSMS-related PDS members and statements specified in the system parmlib concatenation. Ensure these elements are configured as outlined below:

Parameter Key

SMS

ACDS(ACDS data set name)

COMMDS(COMMDS data set name)

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98347

Group Title: TC000010

Rule ID: SV-107451r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000010](#)

Rule Title: PROFILE.TCPIP configuration statements for the TCP/IP stack are not coded properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: The PROFILE.TCPIP configuration file provides system operation and configuration parameters for the TCP/IP stack. Inappropriate values could result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the DELETE statement is not coded in PROFILE.TCPIP files for production systems.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and TN3270CLIENT operands.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the SMFPARMS statement is not used.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP.DATA configuration file.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

1. The SMFPARMS statement is not coded or commented out.
2. The DELETE statement is not coded or commented out for production systems.
3. The SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and

TN3270CLIENT operands.

4. The TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

Fix Text: Review the configuration statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file and ensure they conform to the specifications below:

Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

- 1) The SMFPARMS statement is not coded or commented out.
- 2) The DELETE statement is not coded or commented out for production systems.
- 3) The SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and TN3270CLIENT operands.4) The TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded, the data set specified will be checked for access authorization compliance in STIG ID ITCP0070.

BASE TCP/IP PROFILE.TCPIP CONFIGURATION STATEMENTS FUNCTIONS

INCLUDE- Specifies the name of an MVS data set that contains additional PROFILE.TCPIP statements to be used

- It Alters the configuration specified by previous statements

SMFPARMS- Specifies SMF logging options for some TCP applications; replaced by
SMFCONFIG - Controls collection of audit data

DELETE- Specifies some previous statements, including PORT and PORTRANGE, that are to be deleted
- Alters the configuration specified by previous statements

SMFCONFIG- - Specifies SMF logging options for Telnet, FTP, TCP, API, and stack
activity - Controls collection of audit data

TCPCONFIG- Specifies various settings for the TCP protocol layer of
TCP/IP - Controls port access

CCI: CCI-000067

Group ID (Vulid): V-98349

Group Title: TC000020

Rule ID: SV-107453r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000020](#)

Rule Title: IBM z/OS must be configured to restrict all TCP/IP ports to ports, protocols, and/or services as defined in the PPSM CAL and vulnerability assessments.

Vulnerability Discussion: Remote access services, such as those providing remote access to network devices and information systems, which lack automated control capabilities, increase risk and make remote user access management difficult at best.

Remote access is access to DoD nonpublic information systems by an authorized user (or an information system) communicating through an external, non-organization-controlled network. Remote access methods include, for example, dial-up, broadband, and wireless.

Operating system functionality (e.g., RDP) must be capable of taking enforcement action if the audit reveals unauthorized activity. Automated control of remote access sessions allows organizations to ensure ongoing compliance with remote access policies by enforcing connection rules of remote access applications on a variety of information system components (e.g., servers, workstations, notebook computers, smartphones, and tablets).

Responsibility: N/A

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

Refer the TCP/IP PROFILE DD statement to determine the TCP/IP Ports. If the PROFILE DD statement is not supplied, use the default search order to find the PROFILE data set.

See the IP Configuration Guide for a description of the search order for PROFILE.TCPIP.

If the all the Ports included in the configuration are restricted to the ports, protocols, and/or services, as defined in the Ports, Protocols, and Services Management (PPSM) Category Assurance List (CAL) and vulnerability assessments, this is not a finding.

Fix Text:

Configure TCP/IP PROFILE port definitions to adhere to ports, protocols, and/or services, as defined in the Ports, Protocols, and Services Management (PPSM) Category Assurance List (CAL) and vulnerability assessments.

CCI: CCI-002314

Group ID (Vulid): V-98351

Group Title: TC000030

Rule ID: SV-107455r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000030](#)

Rule Title: The permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Base TCP/IP component must be configured properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: HFS directories and files of the Base TCP/IP component provide the configuration, operational, and executable properties of IBM's TCP/IP system product. Failure to properly secure these objects may lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the permission

bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Base TCP/IP component are configured according to the settings in the following table:

DIRECTORY or FILE	PERMISSION BITS	USERAUDIT BITS
/etc/hosts	0744	faf
/etc/protocol	0744	faf
/etc/resolv.conf	0740	faf
/etc/services	0740	faf
/usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin	0755	faf
/usr/lpp/tcpip/bin	0755	faf

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX File Manager option 14. Review all files located in the table above.

b) If the HFS permission bits and user audit bits for each directory and file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in this table, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: Some of the files listed above are not used in every configuration. Absence of a file will not be considered a FINDING.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7 rwx(least restrictive)
 6 rw
 3 -wx
 2 w
 5 r-x


```

4 r1
--x
0 ---(most restrictive)

```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

```

f log for failed access attempts a log
for failed and successful access
-no auditing

```

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the HFS directories and files for the Base TCP/IP component. Ensure they conform to the specifications in the BASE TCP/IP HFS Object Security Settings below:

BASE TCP/IP HFS Object Security Settings

File	Permission Bits	User Audit Bits
/etc/hosts	0744	faf
/etc/protocol	0744	faf
/etc/resolv.conf	0744	faf
/etc/services	0740	faf
/usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin	0755	faf
/usr/lpp/tcpip/bin	0755	faf

Some of the files listed above (e.g., /etc/resolv.conf) are not used in every configuration. While the absence of a file is generally not a security issue, the existence of a file that has not been properly secured can often be an issue. Therefore, all directories and files that do exist will have the specified permission and audit bit settings.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

```

7   rwx      (least restrictive)
6   rw3
-wx
2   -w-
5   r-x
4   r-l
--x
0   ---      (most restrictive)

```

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

```

f   log for failed access attempts a
log for failed and successful access -
no auditing

```

The following commands can be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```
chmod 0744 /etc/hosts chaudit  
w=sf,rx+f /etc/hosts chmod 0744  
/etc/protocol chaudit w=sf,rx+f  
/etc/protocol chmod 0744  
/etc/resolv.conf chaudit w=sf,rx+f  
/etc/resolv.conf chmod 0740  
/etc/services chaudit w=sf,rx+f  
/etc/services chmod 0755  
/usr/lpp/tcpip/bin chaudit w=sf,rx+f  
/usr/lpp/tcpip/bin chmod 0755  
/usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin chaudit  
w=sf,rx+f /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98353

Group Title: TC000040

Rule ID: SV-107457r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000040](#)

Rule Title: TCP/IP resources must be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: The Communication Server access authorization is used to protect TCP/IP resources such as stack, network, port, and other SERVAUTH resources. These resources provide additional security checks for TCP/IP users. Failure to properly secure these TCP/IP resources could lead to unauthorized user access resulting in the compromise of some system services and possible compromise of data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that the generic resources EZA, EZB and IST are defined to the SERVAUTH resource class and no access is specified.

The IAO will ensure that only authenticated users are permitted access to the network (NETACCESS), port (PORTACCESS), stack (STACKACCESS), CSSMTP, and FTP resources in the SERVAUTH class.

The IAO will ensure that the default access to EZA, EZB and IST -prefixed resources in the SERVAUTH class is no access.

NOTE: This FINDING only pertains to domains running Z/OS Version 2 Release 10 or above, including all releases of z/OS. If the domain being reviewed is not running at the required OS release, this FINDING will be marked NOT APPLICABLE.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource Profile report option 3;4.
Mask on class = SERVAUTH

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for Server Access Authorization resources:

1. The following resources are defined to the SERVAUTH resource class with a UACC(NONE):

EZA.**

EZA.FTP.**

EZA.NETACCESS.**

EZA.PORTACCESS.**

EZA.STACKACCESS.**

EZB.**

EZB.FTP.**

EZB.NETACCESS.**

EZB.PORTACCESS.**

EZB.STACKACCESS.**

If CSSMtp is on the system, the following resource must be defined for use by the CSSMTP started task and authenticated users for email services:

EZB.CSSMTP.sysname.writename.JESnode

IST.**

IST.FTP.**

IST.NETACCESS.**

IST.PORTACCESS.**

IST.STACKACCESS.**

2. No access is granted to, EZA.**, EZB.** AND IST.** (EZA.**, EZB.**, IST.** must be defined). If the product CSSMTP is on the system, no access is given to EZB.CSSMTP

3. Only authenticated users are permitted access to the network (NETACCESS), port (PORTACCESS), stack (STACKACCESS), and FTP resources in the SERVAUTH resource class and email services (EZB.CSSMTP.sysname.writename.JESnode) if CSSMTP is on the system. Authenticated user access is indicated by ID(*) access of READ in the access list (this should not be true for EZA.**, EZB.** AND IST.** which cannot have any entries in the access list).

4. Ensure that the profile WARNING flag is OFF.

c) If all items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO must develop a plan of action to implement the required changes. Ensure the following items are in effect for TCP/IP resources.

(Note: The resource class, resources, and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resource class, resources, and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product's installation guide and can be site specific.)

Ensure that the EZA, EZB and IST resources and/or generic equivalent are defined to the SERVAUTH resource class with a UACC(NONE)

No access is given to the EZA, EZB, and IST resources of the SERVAUTH resource class.

If the product CSSMTP is on the system, no access is given to EZB.CSSMTP of the SERVAUTH resource class. EZB.CSSMTP.sysname.writename.JESnode will be specified and made available to the CSSMTP started task and authenticated users that require access to use CSSMTP for e-mail services.

Only authenticated users that require access are permitted access to the second level of the resources in the SERVAUTH resource class. Examples are the network (NETACCESS), port (PORTACCESS), stack (STACKACCESS), and FTP resources in the SERVAUTH resource class.

The EZB.STACKACCESS. resource access authorizations restrict access to those started tasks with valid requirements and users with valid FTP access requirements.

The EZB.FTP.*.*.ACCESS.HFS) resource access authorizations restrict access to FTP users with specific written documentation showing a valid requirement exists to access OMVS files and Directories.

The following commands are provided as a sample for implementing resource controls:

```

RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.CSSMTP.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.CSSMTP.sysname.writename.JESnode UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT
(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.FTP.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.NETACCESS.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.PORTACCESS.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))
RDEF SERVAUTH EZB.STACKACCESS.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(FAILURE(READ))

```

```

PE EZB.CSSMTP.sysname.writename.JESnode CL(SERVAUTH) ID(authusers) ACC(READ)
PE EZB.FTP.** CL(SERVAUTH) ID(authusers) ACC(READ)

```

```

PE EZB.FTP.sysname.ftpstc.ACCESS.HFS CL(SERVAUTH) ID(ftpprofile) ACC(READ)
PE EZB.NETACCESS.** CL(SERVAUTH) ID(authusers) ACC(READ)
PE EZB.PORTACCESS.** CL(SERVAUTH) ID(authusers) ACC(READ)
PE EZB.STACKACCESS.** CL(SERVAUTH) ID(authusers) ACC(READ)
PE EZB.STACKACCESS.sysname.TCPIP CL(SERVAUTH) ID(ftpprofile) ACC(READ)

```

The following notes apply to these controls:

- EZB.STACKACCESS.sysname.TCPIP access READ should be limited to only those started tasks that require access to the TCPIP Stack as well as any users approved for FTP Access (inbound and/or outbound). FTP users should not have access to the EZB.FTP.sysname.ftpstc.ACCESS.HFS resource unless specific written justification documenting valid requirement for those FTP users to access USS files and directories via FTP.
- To be effective in restricting access, the network (EZB.NETACCESS) resource control requires configuration of the NETACCESS statement in the PROFILE.TCPIP file.
- To be effective in restricting access, the port (EZB.PORTACCESS) resource control requires configuration of a PORT or PORTRANGE statement in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. These port definitions within PROFILE.TCPIP shall be defined to include SAF keyword and a valid name.

A list of possible SERVAUTH resources defined to the first two nodes is shown here: (Note that additional resources may be developed with each new release of TCPIP.)

```

EZA.DCAS.
EZB.BINDDVIPARANGE.
EZB.CIMPROV.
EZB.FRCAACCESS.
EZB.FTP.
EZB.INITSTACK.
EZB.IOCTL.
EZB.IPSECCMD.
EZB.MODDVIPA.
EZB.NETACCESS.
EZB.NETMGMT.
EZB.NETSTAT.
EZB.NSS.
EZB.NSSCERT.
EZB.OSM.

```

EZB.PAGENT.
EZB.PORTACCESS.
EZB.RPCBIND.
EZB.SOCKOPT.
EZB.SNMPAGENT.
EZB.STACKACCESS.
EZB.TN3270.
IST.NETMGMT.
CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98355

Group Title: TC000050

Rule ID: SV-107459r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000050](#)

Rule Title: The RACF SERVAUTH resource class must be active for TCP/IP resources.

Vulnerability Discussion: IBM Provides the SERVAUTH Class for use in protecting a variety of TCP/IP features/functions/products both IBM and third-party. Failure to activate this class will result in unprotected resources. This exposure may threaten the integrity of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

a) Using Vanguard Administrator select Security Server Commands

b) select Option 5 SETROPTS

c) Type an E in CDT classes and hit enter

CDT Classes:..... _ (E to edit data) *data is present*

d) Scroll down to SERVAUTH and check its status if there are TCP/IP resources defined and the SERVAUTH resource class is active, there is NO FINDING.

If there are TCP/IP resources defined and the SERVAUTH resource class is not active, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Ensure that the SERVAUTH resource class is active.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

The SERVAUTH Class is activated with the command SETR CLASSACT (SERVAUTH).

Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(SERVAUTH) GENCMD(SERVAUTH).

CCI: CCI-000068

Group ID (Vulid): V-98357

Group Title: TC000060

Rule ID: SV-107461r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000060](#)

Rule Title: The RACF SERVAUTH resource class must be active for TCP/IP resources.

Vulnerability Discussion: IBM Provides the SERVAUTH Class for use in protecting a variety of TCP/IP features/functions/products both IBM and third-party. Failure to activate this class will result in unprotected resources. This exposure may threaten the integrity of the operating system environment, and compromise the confidentiality of customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
N/A

Check Content:

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator select Security Server Commands
- b) select Option 5 SETROPTS
- c) Type an E in CDT classes and hit enter
CDT Classes:..... _ (E to edit data) *data is present*
- d) Scroll down to SERVAUTH and check its status if there are TCP/IP resources defined and the SERVAUTH resource class is active, there is NO FINDING.

If there are TCP/IP resources defined and the SERVAUTH resource class is not active, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Ensure that the SERVAUTH resource class is active.

Evaluate the impact associated with implementation of the control option. Develop a plan of action to implement the control option as specified in the example below:

The RACF Command SETR LIST will show the status of RACF Controls including a list of ACTIVE classes.

The SERVAUTH Class is activated with the command SETR CLASSACT (SERVAUTH).

Generic profiles and commands should also be enabled with the command SETR GENERIC(SERVAUTH) GENCMD(SERVAUTH).

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98359

Group Title: TC000070

Rule ID: SV-107463r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000070](#)

Rule Title: MVS data sets for the Base TCP/IP component are not properly protected,

Vulnerability Discussion: MVS data sets of the Base TCP/IP component provide the configuration, operational, and executable properties of IBM's TCP/IP system product. Failure to properly secure these data sets may lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that update, create, and scratch access to product data sets are restricted to systems programming personnel.

The IAO will ensure that update, create, and scratch access to the data set(s) containing the TCPIP.DATA and PROFILE.TCPIP configuration files are restricted to systems programming personnel and are logged.

The IAO will ensure that update, create, and scratch access to the data set(s) containing the configuration files shared by TCP/IP applications are restricted to systems programming personnel.

The IAO will ensure that write and allocate access to the data set(s) specified in the INCLUDE statements are restricted to systems programming personnel and are logged.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate and document the configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. Locate and document the Data File identified by the SYSTCPD DD statement. NOTE: Record the covering dataset profile for use in later steps.

b) Ensure the following controls are in effect for the Base TCP/IP component:

1. Using Vanguard Administrator On-line Access and Authorization option
4. Supply the datasets documented above and ensure UPDATE and ALTER access to product data sets is restricted to systems programming personnel (i.e., SMP/E distribution data sets with the prefix SYS1.TCPIP.AEZA and target data sets with the prefix SYS1.TCPIP.SEZA).

2. Using Vanguard Administrator On-line Access and Authorization option
4. Supply the dataset names documented above. Review the access and ensure UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set(s) containing the Data and Profile configuration file is restricted to systems programming personnel.

NOTE: If any INCLUDE statements are specified in the Profile configuration file, the named MVS data sets have the same access authorization requirements.

3. Using Vanguard Administrator Audit Flags Report option 3;3;2. Supply the datasets documented above. All UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set(s) containing the Data and Profile configuration files is logged.

NOTE: If any INCLUDE statements are specified in the Profile configuration file, the named MVS data sets have the same logging requirements.

4. Using Vanguard Administrator On-line Access and Authorization option
4. Supply the dataset name for the configuration file documented above. Review the access and ensure UPDATE and ALTER access to the data set(s) containing the configuration files shared by TCP/IP applications is restricted to systems programming personnel.

c) If all of the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review with the IAO the data set access authorizations defined to the ACP for the Base TCP/IP component. Ensure these data sets are protected in accordance with the following rules:

WRITE and ALLOCATE access to product data sets is restricted to systems programming personnel (i.e., SMP/E distribution data sets with the prefix SYS1.TCPIP.AEZA and target data sets with the prefix SYS1.TCPIP. SEZA).

WRITE and ALLOCATE access to the data set(s) containing the Data and Profile configuration files is restricted to systems programming personnel.

NOTE: If any INCLUDE statements are specified in the Profile configuration file, the named MVS data sets have the same access authorization requirements.

WRITE and ALLOCATE access to the data set(s) containing the Data and Profile configuration files is logged.

NOTE: If any INCLUDE statements are specified in the Profile configuration file, the named MVS data sets have the same logging requirements.

WRITE and ALLOCATE access to the data set(s) containing the configuration files shared by TCP/IP applications is restricted to systems programming personnel.

NOTE: For systems running the TSS ACP replace the WRITE and ALLOCATE with WRITE, UPDATE, CREATE, CONTROL, SCRATCH, and ALL.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98361

Group Title: TC000080

Rule ID: SV-107465r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000080](#)

Rule Title: Configuration files for the TCP/IP stack are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: The TCP/IP stack reads two configuration files to determine values for critical operational parameters. These file names are specified in multiple locations and, depending on the process, are referenced differently. Because system security is impacted by some of the parameter settings, specifying the file names explicitly in each location reduces ambiguity and ensures proper operations. Inappropriate values could result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TCP/IP started task s JCL specifies the PROFILE and SYSTCPD DD statements for the PROFILE.TCPIP and TCPIP.DATA configuration files and TCP/IP started task s JCL includes the RESOLVER_CONFIG variable, set to the name of the file specified on the SYSTCPD DD statement.

- a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. If TCPIP is inactive, review the procedure libraries defined to JES2 and locate the TCPIP JCL member.
- b) Use IBM s dslist utility and review the TCPIP JCL to ensure the following items are in effect for the TCPIP started task JCL:
 1. The PROFILE and SYSTCPD DD statements specify the TCP/IP Profile and Data configuration files respectively.
 2. The RESOLVER_CONFIG variable on the EXEC statement is set to the same file name specified on the SYSTCPD DD statement.
- c) If both of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If either of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the TCP/IP started task JCL to ensure the configuration file names are specified on the appropriate DD statements and parameter option.

During initialization the TCP/IP stack uses fixed search sequences to locate the PROFILE.TCPIP and

TCPIP.DATA files. However, uncertainty is reduced and security auditing is enhanced by explicitly specifying the locations of the files. In the TCP/IP started task s JCL, Data Definition (DD) statements can be used to specify the locations of the files. The PROFILE DD statement identifies the PROFILE.TCPIP file and the SYSTCPD DD statement identifies the TCPIP.DATA file.

The location of the TCPIP.DATA file can also be specified by coding the RESOLVER_CONFIG environment variable as a parameter of the ENVAR option in the TCP/IP started task s JCL. In fact, the value of this variable is checked before the SYSTCPD DD statement by some processes. However, not all processes (e.g., TN3270 Telnet Server) will access the variable to get the file location. Therefore specifying the file location explicitly, both on a DD statement and through the RESOLVER_CONFIG environment variable, reduces ambiguity. The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TCP/IP started task s JCL specifies the PROFILE and SYSTCPD DD statements for the PROFILE.TCPIP and TCPIP.DATA configuration files and TCP/IP started task s JCL includes the RESOLVER_CONFIG variable, set to the name of the file specified on the SYSTCPD DD statement.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98363

Group Title: TC000090

Rule ID: SV-107467r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000090](#)

Rule Title: The IBM z/OS PROFILE.TCPIP configuration statement must include a SMFPARMS and/or SMFCONFIG statement for each TCP/IP stack.

Vulnerability Discussion: If events associated with nonlocal administrative access or diagnostic sessions are not logged, a major tool for assessing and investigating attacks would not be available. This requirement addresses auditing-related issues associated with maintenance tools used specifically for diagnostic and repair actions on organizational information systems.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the DELETE statement is not coded in PROFILE.TCPIP files for production systems.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and TN3270CLIENT operands.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the SMFPARMS statement is not used.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP.DATA configuration file.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

1. The SMFPARMS statement is not coded or commented out.
2. The DELETE statement is not coded or commented out for production systems.

3. The SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and TN3270CLIENT operands.
4. The TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

Fix Text:

Review the configuration statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file and ensure they conform to the specifications below:

Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

- 1) The SMFPARMS statement is not coded or commented out.
- 2) The DELETE statement is not coded or commented out for production systems.
- 3) The SMFCONFIG statement is coded with (at least) the FTPCLIENT and TN3270CLIENT operands.4) The TCPCONFIG and UDPCONFIG statements are coded with (at least) the RESTRICTLOWPORTS operand.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded, the data set specified will be checked for access authorization compliance in STIG ID ITCP0070.

BASE TCP/IP PROFILE.TCPIP CONFIGURATION STATEMENTS FUNCTIONS

INCLUDE- Specifies the name of an MVS data set that contains additional PROFILE.TCPIP statements to be used

- It Alters the configuration specified by previous statements

SMFPARMS- Specifies SMF logging options for some TCP applications; replaced by SMFCONFIG - Controls collection of audit data

DELETE- Specifies some previous statements, including PORT and PORTRANGE, that are to be deleted

- Alters the configuration specified by previous statements

SMFCONFIG- - Specifies SMF logging options for Telnet, FTP, TCP, API, and stack activity - Controls collection of audit data

TCPCONFIG- Specifies various settings for the TCP protocol layer of TCP/IP - Controls port access

CCI: CCI-002884

Group ID (Vulid): V-98365

Group Title: TC000100

Rule ID: SV-107469r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TC000100](#)

Rule Title: TCPIP.DATA configuration statements for the TCP/IP stack will be properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: During the initialization of TCP/IP servers and clients, the TCPIP.DATA configuration file provides information that is essential for proper operations of TCP/IP applications. Inappropriate values could result in undesirable operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECTM-1, ECTM-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the TCPIPJOBNAME, HOSTNAME, DOMAINORIGIN, DATASETPREFIX, and NSINTERADDR statements are coded in the TCPIP.DATA file.

- a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP.DATA configuration file.
- b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Data configuration file:
 1. TCPIPJOBNAME
 2. HOSTNAME
 3. DOMAINORIGIN/DOMAIN (The DOMAIN statement is functionally equivalent to the DOMAINORIGIN Statement)
 4. DATASETPREFIX
- c) If both of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If either of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The system programmer will review the configuration statements in the TCPIP.DATA file and ensure they conform to the specifications below:

TCPIPJOBNAME - Specifies the job name of the TCP/IP address space. This name is also used as part of the name of some network security resources.

HOSTNAME - Specifies the TCP/IP host portion of the DNS name of the system.

DOMAINORIGIN/DOMAIN - Specifies the default domain name used for DNS searches.

DATASETPREFIX - Specifies the high-level qualifier to be used to dynamically allocate other configuration data sets.

The TCPIP.DATA file acts as the anchor configuration data set for the TCP/IP stack and all TCP/IP servers and clients running in z/OS. During the initialization of TCP/IP servers and clients, the TCPIP.DATA file provides basic information that is essential for proper operation.

The above TCPIP.DATA configuration parameters provide crucial information to TCP/IP applications.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98367

Group Title: TN000010

Rule ID: SV-107471r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TN000010](#)

Rule Title: PROFILE.TCPIP configuration statements for the TN3270 Telnet Server are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: The PROFILE.TCPIP configuration file provides system operation and configuration parameters for the TN3270 Telnet Server. Several of these parameters have potential impact to system security. Failure to code the appropriate values could result in unexpected operations and degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that unless documented with the IAM, a TELNETPARMS INACTIVE statement is coded within each TELNETPARMS statement block and specifies a value between 1 and 900. Exceptions are documented with the IAO.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP or TN3270 started task. Locate the configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the profile Data configuration file.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

TELNETGLOBAL Block (only one defined)

1. The KEYRING statement, if used, is only coded within the TELNETGLOBALS statement block.
2. The KEYRING statement, if used, specifies the SAF parameter.

TELNETPARMS Block (one defined for each port the server is listening to, typically ports 23 and 992)

1. The TELNETPARMS INACTIVE statement is coded within each TELNETPARMS statement block and specifies a value between 1 and 900.

NOTE: Effective in z/OS release 1.2, the INACTIVE statement can appear in both TELNETGLOBAL and TELNETPARM statement blocks.

1. The TELNETPARMS TKOSPECLURECON statement is not coded or commented out.

BEGINVTAM Block (one or more defined)

2. The BEGINVTAM RESTRICTAPPL statement is not be coded or commented out.

c) If all of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the configuration statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file and ensure they conform to the specifications below:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

The KEYRING statement, if used, is only coded within the TELNETGLOBALS statement block.

The KEYRING statement, if used, specifies the SAF parameter.

"TELNETPARMS Block (one defined for each port the server is listening to, typically ports 23 and 992) "

The TELNETPARMS INACTIVE statement is coded within each TELNETPARMS statement block and specifies a value between 1 and 900.

INACTIVE statements should not be coded with a value greater than 900 or 0. 0 disables the inactivity timer check.

NOTE: Effective in z/OS release 1.2, the INACTIVE statement can appear in both TELNETGLOBAL and TELNETPARM statement blocks.

The TELNETPARMS TKOSPECLURECON statement should not be coded or it should be commented out.

BEGINVTAM Block (one or more defined)

The BEGINVTAM RESTRICTAPPL statement is not be coded or it should be commented out.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98369

Group Title: TN000020

Rule ID: SV-107473r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TN000020](#)

Rule Title: SSL encryption options for the TN3270 Telnet Server will be specified properly for each statement that defines a SECUREPORT or within the TELNETGLOBALS.

Vulnerability Discussion: During the SSL connection process a mutually acceptable encryption algorithm is selected by the server and client. This algorithm is used to encrypt the data that subsequently flows between the two. However, the level or strength of encryption can vary greatly. Certain configuration options can allow no encryption to be used and others can allow a relatively weak 40-bit algorithm to be used. Failure to properly enforce adequate encryption strength could result in the loss of data privacy.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECMT-2, ECTM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that a TELNETPARMS ENCRYPTION statement is coded for each statement block that defines a SECUREPORT.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that to prevent the use of null or 40-bit encryption, each TELNETPARMS ENCRYPTION statement does not specify any of the following operands: SSL_NULL_Null, SSL_NULL_MD5, SSL_NULL_SHA, SSL_RC4_MD5_EX, or SSL_RC2_MD5_EX.

a) Using SDSF or equivalent to locate the Profile configuration file specified on the PROFILE DD statement in the TCPIP started task JCL or the TN3270 started task if configure separately in z/OS 1.8 and above.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

b) From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the profile configuration file and ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the Profile configuration file:

1. Within each TELNETPARMS block that specifies a SECUREPORT statement, an ENCRYPTION statement is also coded.
2. To prevent the use of non FIPS 140-2 encryption, each TELNETPARMS ENCRYPTION statement will specify any or all of the following operands:
 - a. SSL_3DES_SHA
 - b. SSL_AES_256_SHA
 - c. SSL_AES_128_SHA

c) If both (B)1. and (B)2. of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If either of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO will ensure the system programmer will review the SECUREPORT and TELNETPARMS ENCRYPTION statements and/or the TELNETGLOBALS statement in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. Ensuring that they conform to the requirements specified below.

The TELNETGLOBALS block may specify an ENCRYPTION statement that specifies one or more of the below cipher specifications.

Each TELNETPARMS block that specifies the SECUREPORT statement, an ENCRYPTION statement is coded with one or more of the below cipher specifications. And the TELNETGLOBALS block does or does not specify an ENCRYPTION statement.

To prevent the use of non FIPS 140-2 encryption, the TELNETGLOBALS block and/or each TELNETPARMS block that specifies an ENCRYPTION statement will specify one or more of the following cipher specifications:

Cipher Specifications

SSL_3DES_SHA

SSL_AES_256_SHA

SSL_AES_128_SHA

Note: Always check for the minimum allowed in FIPS 140-2.

CCI: CCI-000068

CCI: CCI-002450

Group ID (Vulid): V-98371

Group Title: TN000030

Rule ID: SV-107475r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TN000030](#)

Rule Title: The warning banner for the TN3270 Telnet Server is not specified or properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: A logon banner can be used to inform users about the environment during the initial logon. In the DISA environment, logon banners are used to warn users against unauthorized entry and the possibility of legal action for unauthorized users, and advise all users that system use constitutes consent to monitoring. Failure to display a logon warning banner without this type of information could adversely impact the ability to prosecute unauthorized users and users who abuse the system.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECWM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements includes MSG10 text that specifies a warning logon banner.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP Date configuration file.

b) Ensure that all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements include MSG10 text that specifies a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only. By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

c) If all the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. Ensure the MSG10 text specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements. See MGG10 below:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

-This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

-Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

DOD requires that a logon warning banner be displayed. Within the TN3270 Telnet Server, the banner can be implemented through the USS table that is specified on a BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement. The text associated with message ID 10 (i.e., MSG10) in the USS table is sent to clients that are subject to USSTCP processing.

CCI: CCI-000048

CCI: CCI-000050

Group ID (Vulid): V-98373

Group Title: TN000040

Rule ID: SV-107477r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TN000040](#)

Rule Title: The warning banner for the TN3270 Telnet Server is not specified or properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: A logon banner can be used to inform users about the environment during the initial logon. In the DISA environment, logon banners are used to warn users against unauthorized entry and the possibility of legal action for unauthorized users, and advise all users that system use constitutes consent to monitoring. Failure to display a logon warning banner without this type of information could adver

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECWM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements includes MSG10 text that specifies a warning logon banner.

- a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP Date configuration file.
- b) Ensure that all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements include MSG10 text that specifies a logon banner. The below banner is mandatory and deviations are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the DoD Chief Information Officer. The thrust of this new policy is to make it clear that there is no expectation of privacy when using DoD information systems and all use of DoD information systems is subject to searching, auditing, inspecting, seizing, and monitoring, even if some personal use of a system is permitted:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only. By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

c) If all the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Review all USS tables referenced in BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. Ensure the MSG10 text specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements. See MGG10 below:

STANDARD MANDATORY DOD NOTICE AND CONSENT BANNER

You are accessing a U.S. Government (USG) Information System (IS) that is provided for USG-authorized use only.

By using this IS (which includes any device attached to this IS), you consent to the following conditions:

-The USG routinely intercepts and monitors communications on this IS for purposes including, but not limited to, penetration testing, COMSEC monitoring, network operations and defense, personnel misconduct (PM), law enforcement (LE), and counterintelligence (CI) investigations.

-At any time, the USG may inspect and seize data stored on this IS.

-Communications using, or data stored on, this IS are not private, are subject to routine monitoring, interception, and search, and may be disclosed or used for any USG authorized purpose.

-This IS includes security measures (e.g., authentication and access controls) to protect USG interests--not for your personal benefit or privacy.

-Notwithstanding the above, using this IS does not constitute consent to PM, LE or CI investigative searching or monitoring of the content of privileged communications, or work product, related to personal representation or services by attorneys, psychotherapists, or clergy, and their assistants. Such communications and work product are private and confidential. See User Agreement for details.

DOD requires that a logon warning banner be displayed. Within the TN3270 Telnet Server, the banner can be implemented through the USS table that is specified on a BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement. The text associated with message ID 10 (i.e., MSG10) in the USS table is sent to clients that are subject to USSTCP processing. CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-001384;CCI

CCI: CCI-001385;CCI

CCI: CCI-001386;CCI

CCI: CCI-001387;CCI

CCI: CCI-001388

Group ID (Vulid): V-98375

Group Title: TN000050

Rule ID: SV-107479r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TN000050](#)

Rule Title: VTAM session setup controls for the TN3270 Telnet Server are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: After a connection from a Telnet client to the TN3270 Telnet Server has been established, the process of session setup with a VTAM application occurs. A number of BEGINVTAM statements must be coded in a specific configuration to ensure adequate control to VTAM applications is maintained. Failure to code the appropriate statements could result in unauthorized access to the host and application resources. This exposure may impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that within each BEGINVTAM statement block, one BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement is coded that specifies only the table name operand. The named table allows access only to session manager applications and NC-PASS applications. This USSTCP statement does not specify any type of client identifier, such as host name or IP address, so that the statement applies to all connections not otherwise controlled.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that within each BEGINVTAM statement block, additional BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements that specify a USS table that allows access to other applications are coded only if the statements include a client identifier operand that references only secure terminals.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that any BEGINVTAM DEFAULTAPPL statement that does not specify a client identifier, or specifies any type of client identifier that would apply to unsecured terminals, specifies a session manager application or an NC-PASS application as the application name.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that for systems at Z/OS Release 2.10 and above, any BEGINVTAM LUMAP statement, if used with the DEFAPPL operand and applied to unsecured terminals, specifies only a session manager application or an NC-PASS application.

a) Display the active started tasks executing on the domain using SDSF, or equivalent JES display product, and locate the TCPIP started task. Locate the TCPIP configuration file identified by the PROFILE DD statement. From the ISPF Primary Option Menu use option 3.4 and review the TCPIP Data configuration file.

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the configuration statements specified in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file:

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

1. Within each BEGINVTAM statement block, one BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement is coded that specifies only the table name operand. No client identifier, such as host name or IP address, is specified so the statement applies to all connections not otherwise controlled.
2. The USS table specified on each back stop USSTCP statement mentioned in Item (1) above is coded to allow access only to session manager applications and NC-PASS applications. This check requires Manual Review.
3. Within each BEGINVTAM statement block, additional BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements that specify a USS table that allows access to other applications may be coded only if the statements include a client identifier operand that references only secure terminals.
4. Any BEGINVTAM DEFAULTAPPL statement that does not specify a client identifier, or specifies any type of client identifier that would apply to unsecured terminals, specifies a session manager application or an NC-PASS application as the application name. This check requires Manual Review. IBM Communications Server Data Analysis
5. Any BEGINVTAM LUMAP statement, if used with the DEFAPPL operand and applied to unsecured terminals, specifies only a session manager application or an NC-PASS application. This check requires Manual Review.

NOTE: The BEGINVTAM LINEMODEAPPL requirements will not be reviewed at this time. Further testing must be performed to determine how the CL/Supersession and NC-PASS applications work with line mode.

c) If all of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the BEGINVTAM configuration statements in the PROFILE.TCPIP file. Ensure they conform to the specifications below.

NOTE: If the INCLUDE statement is coded in the TCP/IP Profile configuration file, the data set specified on this statement must be checked for the following items as well.

Within each BEGINVTAM statement block, one BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement is coded that specifies only the table name operand. No client identifier, such as host name or IP address, is specified so the statement applies to all connections not otherwise controlled.

The USS table specified on each back stop USSTCP statement mentioned above is coded to allow access only to session manager applications and NC PASS applications

Within each BEGINVTAM statement block, additional BEGINVTAM USSTCP statements that specify a USS table that allows access to other applications may be coded only if the statements include a client identifier operand that references only secure terminals.

Any BEGINVTAM DEFAULTAPPL statement that does not specify a client identifier, or specifies any type of client identifier that would apply to unsecured terminals, specifies a session manager application or an NC PASS application as the application name

For z/OS systems, any BEGINVTAM LUMAP statement, if used with the DEFAPPL operand and applied to unsecured terminals, specifies only a session manager application or an NC PASS application.

Further explanation:

After a connection from a Telnet client to the TN3270 Telnet Server has been established, the process of session setup with a VTAM application occurs. A number of BEGINVTAM statements will be coded in a specific configuration to ensure that adequate control over access to VTAM applications is maintained.

Connections originate from secure terminals or unsecured terminals. The TN3270 Telnet Server should be configured to address these two types of connections. Terminals should meet two conditions to be considered secure. One condition involves the hardware and configuration. Secure terminals include devices that are directly attached to the host, such as 3270-type terminals coax connected to a 3174 Control Unit. They also include PCs running 3270 terminal emulation clients attached to a private LAN (i.e., a LAN without access to an external network such as the NIPRNet). The other condition involves the location of the terminals. Secure terminals are located in areas with physical access limited to authorized personnel. Examples of terminals that are not secure are those attached via the NIPRNet or via dial-in servers. The intent of this distinction is to allow additional connection options (e.g., bypassing session manager control) to authorized personnel working in controlled access areas. These connection options may be necessary for operational control or for system recovery procedures.

The BEGINVTAM USSTCP statement can be used to specify a customized Unformatted System Services (USS) table for client connections. The USS table can provide a level of access control by restricting the commands that allow connections to VTAM applications. The USS table specified by the USSTCP statement can be the same as the one used by the SNA component of IBM Communications Server.

The BEGINVTAM DEFAULTAPPL statement can be used to specify the VTAM application to which a client is automatically connected when a session is established using a protocol other than linemode protocol.

The BEGINVTAM LUMAP statement can specify a default VTAM application using the DEFAPPL operand. This processing is similar to the DEFAULTAPPL and LINEMODEAPPL processing, except that a client identifier should be coded. When a client matches the LUMAP specification, the DEFAPPL specification overrides the DEFAULTAPPL or LINEMODEAPPL specifications.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98379

Group Title: TS000010

Rule ID: SV-107483r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TS000010](#)

Rule Title: TSOAUTH resources must be restricted to authorized users.

Vulnerability Discussion: The TSOAUTH resource class controls sensitive privileges, such as OPER, ACCOUNT, CONSOLE, and PARMLIB. Several of these privileges offer the ability, or provide a facility, to modify sensitive operating system resources. Failure to properly control and restrict access to these privileges may result in the compromise of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Potential Impacts: fix
typo error

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

a) From Administrator main menu, go to 3;4;

b) In the Batch/On-line field key in B. In the Class field key in TSOAUTH. On the command line key in 4 (for the Access Lists report). Press ENTER. Accept the processing options by pressing <ENTER>. Submit the report.

c) Review the GENERAL RESOURCE ACCESS LISTS report ensuring the following items are in effect:

1. The ACCT authorization is restricted to security personnel.
2. The CONSOLE authorization is restricted to authorized and READ access may be given to all user when SDSF is installed at the IAOs discretion.
systems personnel (e.g., systems programming personnel, operations staff, etc.).
3. The MOUNT authorization is not granted to on-line TSO users
4. The OPER authorization is restricted to authorized systems personnel (e.g., systems programming personnel, operations staff, etc.).
5. The PARMLIB authorization is restricted to only systems programming personnel and READ access may be given to audit users.

d) If all of the above are true, there is NO FINDING.

e) If any of the above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Configure the TSOAUTH resource class to control sensitive TSO/E commands.

(Note: The resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes identified below are examples of a possible installation. The actual resource type, resources, and/or resource prefixes are determined when the product is actually installed on a system through the product s installation guide and can be site specific.)

Below is listed the access requirements for TSOAUTH resources. Ensure the guidelines for the resources and/or generic equivalent are followed.

The ACCT authorization is restricted to security personnel.

The CONSOLE authorization is restricted to authorized systems personnel (e.g., systems programming personnel, operations staff, etc.) and READ access may be given to all user when SDSF is installed at the IAOs discretion. The MOUNT authorization is restricted to DASD batch users only.

The OPER authorization is restricted to authorized systems personnel (e.g., systems programming personnel, operations staff, etc.).

The PARMLIB authorization is restricted to only z/OS systems programming personnel and READ access may be given to audit users.

The TESTAUTH authorization is restricted to only z/OS systems programming personnel.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98381

Group Title: TS000020

Rule ID: SV-107485r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [TS000020](#)

Rule Title: LOGONIDs must not be defined to SYS1.UADS for non-emergency use.

Vulnerability Discussion: SYS1.UADS is a dataset where LOGONIDs will be maintained with applicable password information when the ACP is not functional. If an unauthorized user has access to SYS1.UADS, they could enter their LOGONID and password into the SYS1.UADS dataset and could give themselves all special attributes on the system. This could enable the user to bypass all security and alter data. They could modify the audit trail information so no trace of their activity could be found.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

a) From Analyzer main menu, go to 4;U.

Note: Analyzer 8.1 with PTF VS48081 is required for this option to be available.

b) Set Exceptions only field to NO. Press ENTER.

c) Submit the report.

d) Review the generated report.

e) If SYS1.UADS userids are limited and reserved for emergency purposes only, there is NO FINDING.

f) If any SYS1.UADS userids are assigned for other than emergency purposes, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The system programmer and IAO will examine the SYS1.UADS entries to ensure LOGONIDs defined include only those users required to support specific functions related to system recovery. Evaluate the impact of accomplishing the change.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98383

Group Title: US000010

Rule ID: SV-107487r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000010](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX SUPERUSER resource must be protected in accordance with guidelines.

Vulnerability Discussion: z/OS UNIX ACP-defined resources consist of sensitive capabilities including SUPERUSER, daemon, and numerous file manipulation privileges. Missing or inaccurate protection of these resources could allow a user to access sensitive data, modify or delete data and operating system controls, or issue commands that could negatively impact system availability.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that the CHOWN.UNRESTRICTED resource is not defined, unless a letter justifying access is filed with the IAO. The IAO will ensure that all SUPERUSER resources for the UNIXPRIV resource class are restricted to appropriate system tasks and/or system programming personnel, unless a letter justifying access is filed with the IAO. And the IAO will ensure that all SUPERUSER resources for the UNIXPRIV resource class have default access of none.

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource Report s option 3; 4 to review profiles listed below. Use Class masking UNIXPRIV and browse the profile listed below.
- b) Review the following items for the UNIXPRIV resource class:
 1. The RACF rules for the SUPERUSER resource specify a default access of NONE.
 2. There are no RACF rules that allow access to the SUPERUSER resource.
 3. There is no RACF rule for CHOWN.UNRESTRICTED defined.
 4. The RACF rules for each of the SUPERUSER resources listed in listed in the UNIXPRIV CLASS RESOURCES Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, specify a default access of NONE.
 5. The RACF rules for each of the SUPERUSER resources listed in the UNIXPRIV CLASS RESOURCES Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, restrict access to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel.
- c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.
- d) If all items in (b) are true, this is NOT A FINDING.

Fix Text: Ensure that all SUPERUSER resources for the UNIXPRIV resource class are restricted to appropriate system tasks and/or system programming personnel.

- 1) The RACF rules for the SUPERUSER resource specify a default access of NONE.
- 2) There are no RACF rules that allow access to the SUPERUSER resource.
- 3) There is no RACF rule for CHOWN.UNRESTRICTED defined.

- 4) The RACF rules for each of the SUPERUSER resources listed in the UNIXPRIV CLASS RESOURCES Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, specify a default access of NONE.
- 5) The RACF rules for each of the SUPERUSER resources listed in the UNIXPRIV CLASS RESOURCES Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, restrict access to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel.

Sample Commands:

```
RDEF UNIXPRIV SUPERUSER.** UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) DATA('REFERENCE ZUSS0023')  
AUDIT(ALL(READ))  
/* do not permit any users/groups to this resource */
```

```
SR CLASS(UNIXPRIV) MASK(CHOWN.UNRESTRICTED)  
/* delete if found */
```

```
PE SUPERUSER.FILESYS.** CL(UNIXPRIV) ID(<SYSPAUDT>)  
/* where SUPERUSER.FILESYS.** represents one of the resources listed in the UNIXPRIV CLASS  
RESOURCES table in the Addendum */
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98385

Group Title: US000020

Rule ID: SV-107489r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000020](#)

Rule Title: BPX resource(s) is(are) not protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: z/OS UNIX ACP-defined resources consist of sensitive capabilities including SUPERUSER, daemon, and numerous file manipulation privileges. Missing or inaccurate protection of these resources could allow a user to access sensitive data, modify or delete data and operating system controls, or issue commands that could negatively impact system availability.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that BPX. Resources are properly protected and access is restricted to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel, unless a letter justifying additional access is filed with the IAO. The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that BPX. DAEMON resources are properly protected and access is restricted to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel, unless a letter justifying additional access is filed with the IAO

a) Use Vanguard Administrator General Resource Report option 3;4 to review the FACILITY Class. Use Class Facility and Profile BPX.*.** for the masking.

b) Review the following items for the FACILITY resource class, TYPE(FAC):

1. The RACF rules for the BPX.** resource specify a default access of NONE.
2. There are no RACF user access to the BPX.** resource.
3. There is no RACF rule for BPX.SAFFASTPATH defined.
4. The RACF rules for each of the BPX resources listed in the General Facility Class BPX Resources Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum specify a default access of NONE.
5. The RACF rules for each of the BPX resources listed in the General Facility Class BPX Resources Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum GENERAL FACILITY CLASS BPX Resources, restrict access to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel .

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

d) If all items in (b) are true, this is NOT A FINDING.

Fix Text: There are a number of resources available under z/OS UNIX that must be secured in order to preserve system integrity while allowing effective application and user access. All of these resources might not be used in every configuration, but several of them have critical impacts.

The default access for each of these resources must be no access. A generic resource (e.g., BPX.***) must also be set to a default access of none to cover future additions. Because they convey especially powerful privileges, the settings for BPX.DAEMON, BPX.SAFFASTPATH, BPX.SERVER, and BPX.SUPERUSER require special attention.

Access to BPX.DAEMON must be restricted to the z/OS UNIX kernel userid, z/OS UNIX daemons (e.g., inetd, syslogd, ftpd), and other system software daemons (e.g., web servers).

As noted above, the BPX.SAFFASTPATH definition can cause successful security checks not to be audited. Because auditing of all accesses is required for some system files, BPX.SAFFASTPATH must not be used.

Access to BPX.SERVER must be restricted to system software processes that act as servers under z/OS UNIX (e.g., web servers).

Access to BPX.SUPERUSER must be restricted to Security Administrators and individual systems programming personnel. It is not appropriate for all systems programming personnel, only for those with responsibilities for components or products that use z/OS UNIX and that require superuser capability for maintenance.

- 1) The RACF rules for the BPX.** resource specify a default access of NONE.
- 2) There are no RACF user access to the BPX.** resource.
- 3) There is no RACF rule for BPX.SAFFASTPATH defined.
- 4) The RACF rules for each of the BPX resources listed in "General Facility Class BPX Resources" table in the zOS STIG Addendum specify a UACC value of NONE.
- 5) The RACF rules for each of the BPX resources listed in the "General Facility Class BPX Resources" table in the zOS STIG Addendum restrict access to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel as specified.

The following list of sample commands are provided to implement this requirement.

```
rdef facility bpx.** uacc(none) owner(admin) audit(all(read)) - data('see
zuss0021') rdef facility bpx.daemon uacc(none) owner(admin) - audit(all(read))
data('see zuss0021')
pe bpx.daemon cl(facility id(<authorized_users>) rdef
facility bpx.debug uacc(none) owner(admin) -
audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021') pe bpx.debug
cl(facility id(<authorized_users>) rdef facility
bpx.fileattr.apf uacc(none) owner(admin) -
audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021')
pe bpx.fileattr.apf cl(facility id(<authorized_users>))
```

```
rdef facility bpx.fileattr.progctl uacc(none) owner(admin)
- audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021') pe
bpx.fileattr.progctl cl(facility id(<authorized_users>) rdef
facility bpx.jobname uacc(none) owner(admin) -
audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021') pe bpx.jobname
cl(facility id(<authorized_users>) rdef facility bpx.server
uacc(none) owner(admin) - audit(all(read)) data('see
zuss0021') pe bpx.server cl(facility
id(<authorized_users>) rdef facility bpx.smf uacc(none)
owner(admin) - audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021') pe
bpx.smf cl(facility id(<authorized_users>) rdef facility
```

```
bpx.stor.swap uacc(none) owner(admin) audit(all(read))
data('see zuss0021')
pe bpx.stor.swap cl(facility id(<authorized_users>))
rdef facility bpx.superuser uacc(none) owner(admin)
audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021')
pe bpx.superuser cl(facility id(<authorized_users>))
rdef facility bpx.wlmsrver uacc(none) owner(admin)
audit(all(read)) data('see zuss0021') pe bpx.wlmsrver
cl(facility id(<authorized_users>))
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98387

Group Title: US000030

Rule ID: SV-107491r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000030](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX MVS HFS directory(s) with "other" write permission bit set are not properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that the HFS directory(ies) with the "other" write permission bit set is (are) not properly defined.

- a) If there are no directories that have the other write permission bit set on without the sticky bit set on, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the sticky bit is indicated as a t or T in the execute portion of the other permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a directory with the sticky bit on could be drwxrwxrwt .

- b) If all directories that have the other write permission bit set on do not contain any files with the setuid bit set on, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the setuid bit is indicated as an s or S in the execute portion of the owner permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a file with the setuid bit on could be -rwsrwxrwx .

- c) If all directories that have the other write permission bit set on do not contain any files with the setgid bit set on, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the setgid bit is indicated as an s or S in the execute portion of the group permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a file with the setgid bit on could be -rwxrwsrwx .

- d) If (a), (b), or (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will verify the following:

- b) There are no directories that have the other write permission bit set on without the sticky bit set on.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the sticky bit is indicated as a t or T in the execute portion of the other permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a directory with the sticky bit on could be drwxrwxrwt .

- c) All directories that have the other write permission bit set on do not contain any files with the setuid bit set on.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the setuid bit is indicated as an s or S in the execute portion of the owner permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a file with the setuid bit on could be -rwsrwxrwx .

- d) All directories that have the other write permission bit set on do not contain any files with the setgid bit set on.

NOTE: In the symbolic permission bit display, the setgid bit is indicated as an s or S in the execute portion of the group permissions. For example, a display of the permissions of a file with the setgid bit on could be -rwxrwsrwx .

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98389

Group Title: US000040

Rule ID: SV-107493r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000040](#)

Rule Title: The RACF Classes required to properly security the z/OS UNIX environment are not ACTIVE.

Vulnerability Discussion: The FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV Class support profiles used to secure the z/OS UNIX (OMVS) environment. Without these classes being in an ACTIVE status, system integrity can be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that the ACTIVE CLASSES list includes entries for the FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV resource classes.

- a) Review Vanguard Analyzer RACF Class Descriptor Table Analysis option 3; 1
- b) Ensure the following CLASSES list includes entries for the FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV resource classes are listed as STATUS is ACTIVE, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: UNIXPRIV class profiles are used to manage certain system privileges that are typically associated with z/OS UNIX superuser authority. By defining UNIXPRIV class profiles, certain individual superuser privileges can be granted to users who do not have superuser authority. This reduces the security risks associated with assigning full superuser authority to users.

SURROGAT class profiles are only needed if there are servers (e.g., web server) running in the z/OS UNIX environment that must be able to act with the security context of a client and that client does not supply a password or other authenticator for the ACP.

FACILITY class profiles are used by a variety of IBM components including UNIX System Services (OMVS). BPX prefixed profiles in this class are critical to the proper security of the z/OS UNIX environment.

Ensure that the required classes are active. Develop a plan of action and activate with the RACF commands:

SETR CLASSACT(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

SETR GENERIC(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)
SETR GENCMD(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

SETR RACL(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98391

Group Title: US000050

Rule ID: SV-107495r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000050](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX security parameters in etc/profile are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that the umask command is executed with a value of 077 and the LOGNAME variable is marked read-only for the /etc/profile file, exceptions are documented with the IAO.

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14 open /etc directory and brows the profile file
- b) If the final or only instance of the umask command in /etc/profile is specified as umask 077 , there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the LOGNAME variable is marked read-only (i.e., readonly LOGNAME) in /etc/profile, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If (b) or (c), above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Verify that the UMASK command is executed with a value of 077 and the LOGNAME variable is marked read-only for the /etc/profile file, exceptions are documented with the IAO.

The /etc/profile file is the system-wide profile that is executed for each user s shell invocation. It provides a default environment for users. It sets environment variables and executes commands. Although there are several variables and commands that can be included, those with notable security considerations are the STEPLIB variable and the UMASK command. The STEPLIB variable should be assigned a value of none in /etc/profile unless a specific requirement for another value exists. The use of STEPLIB must be coordinated with the SYS1.PARMLIB(BPXPRMxx) STEPLIBLIST control, the /etc/steplib file, and the use of RTLS. The umask command must be executed in /etc/profile with a value of 077. This sets the file-creation permission-code mask so that a file creator has full permissions, group members have no permission, and other users have no permission. Exceptions to this may occur during software installation when the installation process demands a more permissive value, during database access by users, and during administrative actions. All requirements will be justified and documented with the IAO.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98393

Group Title: US000060

Rule ID: SV-107497r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000060](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX security parameters in /etc/rc not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that any chmod or chaudit command specified in the /etc/rc file does not result in less restrictive security than what is specified in System Directory Security Settings found in the U_zOS_STIG_Addendum.

. The Systems Programmer will ensure that the _BPX_JOBNAME variable is set to match the daemon s name (e.g., inetd, syslogd)

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14. Use the CD command to change to the /etc directory and browse the rc file.
- b) If all of the chmod commands in /etc/rc do not result in less restrictive access than what is specified in the table entitled System Directory Security Settings and the table entitled System File Security Settings in table the z/OS STIG Addendum there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: The use of chmod commands in /etc/rc is required in most environments to comply with the required settings, especially for dynamic objects such as the /dev directory.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7 rwx(least restrictive)

6 rw

3 -wx

2 w-

5 r-x

4 r-l

--x

0 --- (most restrictive)

- c) If all of the chaudit commands in /etc/rc do not result in less auditing than what is specified in the table entitled System Directory Security Settings and the table entitled System File Security Settings in Section 2.5.2.5, Z/OS UNIX HFS Directories and Files, of the the z/OS STIG Addendum, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: The use of chaudit commands in /etc/rc may not be necessary. If none are found, there is NO FINDING.

The possible audit bits settings are as follows: f log for failed access attempts a log for failed and successful access
- no auditing

d) If the _BPX_JOBNAME variable is appropriately set (i.e., to match daemon name) as each daemon (e.g., syslogd, inetd) is started in /etc/rc, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: If _BPX_JOBNAME is not specified, the started address space will be named using an inherited value. This could result in reduced security in terms of operator command access.

e) If (b), (c), or (d) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Table 8 - System Directory Security Settings

Note: Any Directory that uses AUTOMOUNT, does not require the specified settings.

Fix Text: Review the settings in the /etc/rc. The /etc/rcfile is the system initialization shell script. When z/OS UNIX kernel services start, /etc/rc is executed to set file permissions and ownership for dynamic system files and to perform other system startup functions such as starting daemons. There can be many commands in /etc/rc. There are two specific guidelines that must be followed:

Verify that The CHMOD or CHAUDIT command does not result in less restrictive security than what is specified in the table in the z/OS STIG addendum under the SYSTEM DIRECTORY SECURITY SETTINGS,

Immediately prior to each command that starts a daemon, the _BPX_JOBNAME variable must be set to match the daemon s name (e.g., inetd, syslogd). The use of _BPX_USERID is at the site s discretion, but is recommended.

CCI: CCI-000366

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98395

Group Title: US000070

Rule ID: SV-107499r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000070](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX resources must be protected in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: z/OS UNIX ACP-defined resources consist of sensitive capabilities including SUPERUSER, daemon, and numerous file manipulation privileges. Missing or inaccurate protection of these resources could allow a user to access sensitive data, modify or delete data and operating system controls, or issue commands that could negatively impact system availability.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
N/A

Check Content:

he Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that BPX.SRV.userid resources are properly protected and access is restricted to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel, unless a letter justifying additional access is filed with the IAO.

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource Report option 3;4 to review the FACILITY Class. Use Class Facility and Profile BPX.SRV.** for the masking.
- b) If the RACF rules for all BPX.SRV.user SURROGAT resources specify a default access of NONE, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the RACF rules for all BPX.SRV.user SURROGAT resources restrict access to system software processes (e.g., web servers) that act as servers under Z/OS

UNIX, there is NO FINDING.

- d) If (b) or (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: SURROGAT class BPX resources are used in conjunction with server applications that are performing tasks on behalf of client users that may not supply an authenticator to the server. This can be the case when clients are otherwise validated or when the requested service is performed from userids representing groups.

The default access for each BPX.SRV.userid resource must be no access. Access can be permitted only to system software processes that act as servers under z/OS UNIX (e.g., web servers).

- 1) RACF rules for all BPX.SRV.user SURROGAT resources must specify a default access of NONE.

A sample is provided here:

```
RDEF SURROGAT BPX.SRV.user UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
```

- 2) RACF rules for all BPX.SRV.user SURROGAT resources must restrict access to system software processes (e.g., web servers) that act as servers under z/OS UNIX.

RDEF SURROGAT BPX.SRV.user UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN) AUDIT(ALL(READ))
PE BPX.SRV.user CL(SURROGAT) ID(<server>)

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98397

Group Title: US000080

Rule ID: SV-107501r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000080](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX MVS data sets or HFS objects are not properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

(ZUSS0031: CAT II) The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that data set rules for the data sets referenced in the ROOT and MOUNT statements in BPXPRMxx member in. PARMLIB are properly restricted and access is restricted to appropriate system tasks or systems programming personnel, unless a letter justifying additional access is filed with the IAO.

- a) Use Vanguard Analyzer UNIX System Services Filesystems option 3;N to review current UNIX System Mount points Use the R command to review the dataset rules for each profile listed below.
- b) If the RACF data set rules for the data sets referenced in the ROOT and the MOUNT statements in BPXPRMxx restrict update access to the Z/OS UNIX kernel (i.e., OMVS or OMVSKERN) there is NO FINDING.
- c) If the RACF data set rules for the data set referenced in the ROOT and the MOUNT statements in BPXPRMxx restrict update and/or allocate access to systems programming personnel there is NO FINDING.
- d) If (b) or (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: Review the access authorizations defined in the ACP for the MVS data sets that contain operating system components and for the MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems and ensure that they conform to the specifications below Review the UNIX permission bits on the HFS directories and files and ensure that they conform to the specifications below:

The ACP data set rules for the data sets referenced in the ROOT and the MOUNT statements in BPXPRMxx restrict update access to the z/OS UNIX kernel (i.e., OMVS or OMVSKERN

The ACP data set rules for the data set referenced in the ROOT and the MOUNT statements in BPXPRMxx restrict update and/or allocate access to systems programming personnel

The ROOT parameter specifies data for the file system that is to be mounted as the root file system for z/OS UNIX. ROOT can have a number of sub-parameters; the FILESYSTEM and SETUID|NOSETUID subparameters have security considerations. FILESYSTEM can be used to specify the name of the MVS HFS data set that holds the root file system. As the highest point in the HFS hierarchy, this file system is critical to system operations. Therefore appropriate ACP access rules must be written to protect the named data set. Update and alter access must be restricted to the z/OS UNIX kernel and individual systems programming personnel. The SETUID|NOSETUID sub-parameter specifies whether or not the set-user-ID or set-group-ID permission bits are supported. SETUID|NOSETUID also impacts the APF authorized and program-controlled extended attributes. For the root file system, SETUID must be specified for normal operations.

The MOUNT parameter specifies data for a file system that is to be mounted by z/OS UNIX. There are usually multiple MOUNT statements and each can have a number of sub-parameters. The FILESYSTEM, SETUID|NOSETUID, and SECURITY|NOSECURITY sub-parameters have significant security considerations. FILESYSTEM can be used to specify the name of the MVS HFS data set that holds the logical file system. Appropriate ACP access rules must be written to protect the named data set. Update and alter access must be restricted to the z/OS UNIX kernel and to individual systems programming personnel. The SETUID|NOSETUID sub parameter specifies whether or not the set-user-ID or set group ID permission bits are supported. SETUID|NOSETUID also impacts the APF authorized and program-controlled extended attributes. SETUID may be specified for those file systems that contain only vendor-provided software or that have been documented to the IAO as requiring this support. Otherwise NOSETUID must be specified. The SECURITY|NOSECURITY subparameter specifies whether security checks are performed. SECURITY must be specified unless a specific exception for the file system has been identified and documented to the IAO. Regardless of IBM defaults, the values for SETUID|NOSETUID and SECURITY|NOSECURITY must be explicitly coded to protect against potential vendor changes and to simplify security reviews.

Security rules must be defined to prevent unauthorized changes to the z/OS UNIX components in MVS data sets. Because z/OS UNIX is integrated with the z/OS base control program, many of the z/OS UNIX components reside in data sets that are protected by security definitions specified elsewhere. The data set names (or masks) unique to z/OS UNIX that may require additional definitions are listed in this section. Data sets in conventional MVS formats (e.g., PDS) and those in HFS format are listed. There is also a note on security for user MVS data sets in HFS format.

The following HFS format data sets are unique to z/OS UNIX and require security definitions:

MVS DATA SETS CONTAINING HFS DATA

DATA SET NAME/MASK MAINTENANCE TYPE

SYS1.OE.ROOT	Target
SYS3.OE.ETCFILES	Target

These data sets should have all access restricted to systems programming personnel and to the z/OS UNIX kernel userid OMVS. The site may choose different names for these data sets, but the access restrictions must be maintained.

There may be additional data sets that contain system HFS data. Any data set that specifies a file system that is at the root level (e.g., /tmp, /u) must also have all access restricted to systems programming personnel and to the z/OS UNIX kernel userid.

Depending on the number of users defined in a given z/OS UNIX image, there may be a need to define individual MVS data sets to hold their personal HFS format data. These data sets must be protected in

accordance with the existing security guidelines for user data. However, there is a need for special additions to those rules. The z/OS UNIX kernel userid OMVS must have update access to all user HFS data sets. Also, users must not have update access to the MVS data sets so that HFS permission controls cannot be altered outside of the z/OS UNIX environment.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

Group ID (Vulid): V-98399

Group Title: US000090

Rule ID: SV-107503r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000090](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX MVS data sets WITH z/OS UNIX COMPONENTS are not properly protected

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that data set rules for the data sets referenced in the table A-19 are properly restricted and UPDATE and/or ALLOCATE/ALTER access is restricted to systems programming personnel, unless a

letter justifying additional access is filed with the IAO.

- a) Use Vanguard Administrator Data Set Reports option 3;3 to review dataset profiles listed in the table above.
- b) If the RACF data set rules for each of the data sets listed in Section 2.5.2.4.1 MVS Data Sets with Z/OS UNIX Components, Table A-19, of the Z/OS STIG restrict UPDATE and ALTER access to systems programming personnel, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Verify that the ACP data set rules for each of the data sets listed in the specified table in the z/OS STIG

Addendum under MVS DATA SETS WITH z/OS UNIX COMPONENTS restrict UPDATE and ALLOCATE access to systems programming personnel.

The data sets designated as distribution data sets should have all access restricted to systems programming personnel. TSO/E users who also use z/OS UNIX should have read access to the SYS1.SBPX* data sets. Read access for all users to the remaining target data sets is at the site s discretion. All other access must be restricted to systems programming personnel.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

Group ID (Vulid): V-98401

Group Title: US000100

Rule ID: SV-107505r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000100](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX HFS permission bits and audit bits for each directory will be properly protected or specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that the HFS permission bits for each directory match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in the table A-21 entitled System Directory Security Settings in Section 2.5.2.5.1. found in the U_zOS_STIG_Addendum

a) Use Vanguard UNIX file manager option 14 and review the files listed in the SYSTEM DIRECTORY SECURITY SETTINGS Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum,

If the HFS permission bits for each directory match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in Section 2.5.2.5.1, Z/OS System HFS Directories, Table A21, of the Z/OS STIG, there is NO FINDING.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7 rwx(least restrictive)

6 rw

3 -wx

2 w-

5 r-x

4 r-l

--x

0 --- (most restrictive)

b) If the HFS user audit bits for each directory match or include the specified settings listed in Section 2.5.2.5.1, Z/OS System HFS Directories, Table A-21, of the Z/OS STIG, there is NO FINDING.

The possible audit bits settings are as follows: f log for failed access attempts a log for failed and successful access
- no auditing

c) If (b) or (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on each of the HFS directory in the table in the z/OS STIG Addendum under the SYSTEM DIRECTORY SECURITY SETTINGS, are equal or more restrictive.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7	rwX	(least restrictive)
6	rw3	
	-wX	
2	-w-	
5	r-X	
4	r-l	
	--X	
0	---	(most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a
log for failed and successful access -
no auditing

The following commands are a sample of the commands to be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```
chmod 0755 /  
chaudit w=sf,rx+f /  
chmod 0755 /bin  
chaudit rwx=f /bin
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98403

Group Title: US000110

Rule ID: SV-107487r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000110](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX SYSTEM FILE SECURITY SETTINGS will be properly protected or specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, DCSL-1, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that the HFS user audit bits for each file match settings listed in the table A-22 entitled System File Security Settings in Section 2.5.2.5.2.

Use Vanguard Unix File Manager option 14 and review all files listed in the SYSTEM FILE SECURITY SETTINGS Table in the U_zOS_STIG_Addendum:

NOTE: Some of the files listed in the referenced Z/OS STIG table are not used in every domain. If the file does not exist, there is NO FINDING.

a) If the HFS permission bits for each file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in SYSTEM FILE SECURITY SETTINGS Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, there is NO FINDING.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7 rwx(least restrictive)

6 rw3

-wx

2 w-

5 r-x

4 r-l

--x 0

(mos

t

restr

ctive

)

b) If the HFS user audit bits for each file match or include the specified settings listed SYSTEM FILE SECURITY SETTINGS Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum, there is NO FINDING.

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a log
for failed and successful access
- no auditing

c) If (b) or (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the HFS files listed in the SYSTEM FILE SECURITY SETTINGS Table in the z/OS STIG Addendum.

There are a number of files that must be secured to protect system functions in z/OS UNIX. Where not otherwise specified, these files must receive a permission setting of 744 or 774. The 774 setting may be used at the site s discretion to help to reduce the need for assignment of superuser privileges. The table identifies permission bit and audit bit settings that are required for these specific files. More restrictive permission settings may be used at the site s discretion or as specific environments dictate.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7	rwX	(least restrictive)
6	rw3	
	-wX	
2	-w-	
5	r-X	
4	r-l	
	--X	
0	---	(most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a
log for failed and successful access -
no auditing

The following commands are a sample of the commands to be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```
chmod 1755 /bin/sh
chaudit w=sf,rx+f /bin/sh
chmod 0740 /dev/console
chaudit rwx=f
/dev/console
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98405

Group Title: US000120

Rule ID: SV-107509r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000120](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX MVS data sets used as step libraries in /etc/steplib are not properly protected

Vulnerability Discussion: For the z/OS UNIX environment, there are MVS data sets that contain operating system components, MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with operating system components, and MVS data sets that contain HFS file systems with application system and user data. All of these MVS data sets require definitions in the ACP to enforce desired access controls. In addition, the UNIX permission bits must be properly set on the HFS directories and files to enforce desired access controls.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that update and allocate access to libraries residing in the /etc/steplib is limited to system programmers only, unless a letter justifying access is filed with the IAO, all update and allocate access is logged.

- a) Use Vanguard UNIX file manager option 14. Use the CD command to change to the /etc directory and use the browse command to review file located in /etc/steplib
- b) The RACF data set rules for libraries specified in the STEPLIBLIST file allow inappropriate (e.g., global READ) access.
- c) The RACF data set rules for libraries specified in the STEPLIBLIST file do not restrict UPDATE and/or ALTER access to only systems programming personnel.
- d) The RACF data set rules for libraries specified in the STEPLIBLIST file do not specify that all (i.e., failures and successes) UPDATE and/or ALTER access will be logged.
- e) If all of the above are untrue, there is NO FINDING.
- f) If any of the above is true, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Verify with the IAO that update and allocate access to libraries residing in the /etc/steplib is limited to system programmers only.

The STEPLIBLIST parameter specifies the pathname of the HFS file that contains the list of MVS data sets that are used as step libraries for programs that have the set-user-id or set group id permission bit set. The use of STEPLIBLIST is at the site's discretion, but if used the value of STEPLIBLIST will be /etc/steplib. All update and alter access to the MVS data sets in the list will be logged and only systems programming personnel will be authorized to update the data sets.

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98407

Group Title: US000130

Rule ID: SV-107511r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000130](#)

Rule Title: The RACF Classes required to properly security the z/OS UNIX environment are not ACTIVE.

Vulnerability Discussion: The FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV Class support profiles used to secure the z/OS UNIX (OMVS) environment. Without these classes being in an ACTIVE status, system integrity can be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that the ACTIVE CLASSES list includes entries for the FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV resource classes.

- a) Review Vanguard Analyzer RACF Class Descriptor Table Analysis option 3; 1
- b) Ensure the following CLASSES list includes entries for the FACILITY, SURROGAT, and UNIXPRIV resource classes are listed as STATUS is ACTIVE, there is NO FINDING.
- c) If (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

UNIXPRIV class profiles are used to manage certain system privileges that are typically associated with z/OS UNIX superuser authority. By defining UNIXPRIV class profiles, certain individual superuser privileges can be granted to users who do not have superuser authority. This reduces the security risks associated with assigning full superuser authority to users.

SURROGAT class profiles are only needed if there are servers (e.g., web server) running in the z/OS UNIX environment that must be able to act with the security context of a client and that client does not supply a password or other authenticator for the ACP.

FACILITY class profiles are used by a variety of IBM components including UNIX System Services (OMVS). BPX prefixed profiles in this class are critical to the proper security of the z/OS UNIX environment.

Ensure that the required classes are active. Develop a plan of action and activate with the RACF commands:

SETR CLASSACT(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

SETR GENERIC(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

SETR GENCMD(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

SETR RACL(FACILITY SURROGAT UNIXPRIV)

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-002233

Group ID (Vulid): V-98409

Group Title: US000140

Rule ID: SV-107513r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000140](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX OMVS parameters in PARMLIB are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure parmlib member IEASYSxx specifies parameter OMVS and does not specify OMVS=DEFAULT.

a) Using Vanguard Analyzer online display select Parmlib Analysis option 3;L. When Parmlib options are displayed press enter to continue. When the Parmlib member list is presented locate the IEASYSxx member and browse this member.

NOTE: If the OMVS statement is not specified, OMVS=DEFAULT is used. This will result (as of Z/OS Release 2.8) in the Z/OS UNIX kernel starting in minimum configuration mode. In minimum mode there is no access to permanent file systems or to the shell, and IBM s Communication Server TCP/IP will not run.

b) If the parameter is specified as OMVS=xx or OMVS=(xx,xx,) in the IEASYSxx member, there is NO FINDING.

c) If the parameter is not specified as OMVS=xx or OMVS=(xx,xx,), this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the settings in PARMLIB and /etc for z/OS UNIX security parameters and ensure that the values conform to the specifications below:

The parameter is specified as OMVS=xx or OMVS=(xx,xx,) in the IEASYSxx member.

NOTE: If the OMVS statement is not specified, OMVS=DEFAULT is used. In minimum mode there is no access to permanent file systems or to the shell, and IBM s Communication Server TCP/IP will not run.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98411

Group Title: US000150

Rule ID: SV-107515r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000150](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX BPXPRMxx security parameters in PARMLIB are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure parmlib member BPXPRMxx follows the specifications specified for the above control parameters SUPERUSER, STEPLIBLIST, USERIDALIASTABLE, STARTUP_PROC, and MOUNT.

- a) Use Vanguard Analyzer Parmlib Analysis option L. Browse all the BPXPRMxx members.
- b) Review the logical parmlib data sets, example:
SYS1.PARMLIB(BPXPRMxx), for the following UNIX Parameter Keywords and Values:

Parameter Keyword Value
SUPERUSER BPXROOT
TTYGROUP TTY
STEPLIBLIST (optional) /etc/steplib
If specified will use the above value.
USERIDALIASTABLE Will not be specified.
ROOT SETUID will be specified
MOUNT NOSETUID or (SETUID (for Vendor-provided files)) &
SECURITY (Specified regardless of Vendor-provided or not)
STARTUP_PROC OMVS

- c) If the required parameter keywords and values are defined, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If the required parameter keywords and values are not defined, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the settings in PARMLIB member BPXPRMxx for z/OS UNIX security parameters and ensure that the values conform to the specifications below:

Parameter Keyword	Value
SUPERUSER	BPXROOT

TTYGROUP TTY
STEPLIBLIST /etc/steplib
USERIDALIASTABLE Will not be specified.
ROOT SETUID will be specified
MOUNT NOSETUIDSETUID (for Vendor-provided files)SECURITY
STARTUP_PROC OMVS

BPXPRMxx is the SYS1.PARMLIB member that contains the parameters that control the z/OS UNIX environment. BPXPRMxx controls the way features work and it establishes logical access to data by configuring the HFS environment.

The SUPERUSER parameter specifies the userid to be assigned to users when the su command is entered without a userid operand. The userid must be defined to the ACP as BPXROOT and have a UID of 0.

The TTYGROUP parameter specifies the group name assigned to pseudo terminals (PTYs) and remote terminals (RTYs). The group must be defined to the ACP with a unique GID and users must not be assigned to this group. This group name is used by some shell commands (e.g., talk and write) when writing to the PTY or RTY being used by another user. The name TTY must be used.

The STEPLIBLIST parameter specifies the pathname of the HFS file that contains the list of MVS data sets that are used as step libraries for programs that have the set-user-id or set group id permission bit set. The use of STEPLIBLIST is at the site's discretion, but if used the value of STEPLIBLIST will be /etc/steplib. All update and alter access to the MVS data sets in the list will be logged and only systems programming personnel will be authorized to update the data sets.

The USERIDALIASTABLE parameter specifies the pathname of the HFS file that contains a list of userids and group names with their corresponding alias names. The alias table is intended primarily for use where mixed or lower case userids are used in the UNIX environment. Because the z/OS/ MVS components support only upper case userids, the USERIDALIASTABLE will not be used.

The ROOT parameter specifies data for the file system that is to be mounted as the root file system for z/OS UNIX. ROOT can have a number of sub-parameters; the FILESYSTEM and SETUID|NOSETUID subparameters have security considerations. FILESYSTEM can be used to specify the name of the MVS HFS data set that holds the root file system. As the highest point in the HFS hierarchy, this file system is critical to system operations. Therefore appropriate ACP access rules must be written to protect the named data set. Update and alter access must be restricted to the z/OS UNIX kernel and individual systems programming personnel. The SETUID|NOSETUID sub-parameter specifies whether or not the set-user-ID or set-group-ID permission bits are supported. SETUID|NOSETUID also impacts the APF authorized and program-controlled extended attributes. For the root file system, SETUID must be specified for normal operations.

The MOUNT parameter specifies data for a file system that is to be mounted by z/OS UNIX. There are usually multiple MOUNT statements and each can have a number of sub-parameters. The FILESYSTEM, SETUID|NOSETUID, and SECURITY|NOSECURITY sub-parameters have significant security considerations. FILESYSTEM can be used to specify the name of the MVS HFS data set that holds the logical file system. Appropriate ACP access rules must be written to protect the named data set. Update and alter access must be restricted to the z/OS UNIX kernel and to individual systems programming personnel. The SETUID|NOSETUID sub parameter specifies whether or not the set-user-ID or set group ID permission bits are supported.

SETUID|NOSETUID also impacts the APF authorized and program-controlled extended attributes. SETUID may be specified for those file systems that contain only vendor-provided software or that have been documented to the IAO as requiring this support. Otherwise NOSETUID must be specified. The SECURITY|NOSECURITY subparameter specifies whether security checks are performed. SECURITY must

be specified unless a specific exception for the file system has been identified and documented to the IAO. Regardless of IBM defaults, the values for SETUID|NOSETUID and SECURITY|NOSECURITY must be explicitly coded to protect against potential vendor changes and to simplify security reviews.

The STARTUP_PROC parameter specifies the name of the JCL procedure (PROC) that starts the z/OS UNIX component. This started task must be defined to the ACP. The name OMVS must be used.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98413

Group Title: US000160

Rule ID: SV-107517r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000160](#)

Rule Title: The z/OS Default profiles must not be defined in the corresponding FACILITY Class Profile for classified systems.

Vulnerability Discussion: The RACF FACILITY Class BPX.UNIQUE.USER profile contains the userid or the userid/group ID of the default profiles to be used for a user without a z/OS UNIX profile (i.e., OMVS Segment). In classified system user access will not be determined by default.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure that the BPX.DEFAULT.USER for the FACILITY resource class is only used for FTP socket applications on non classified systems.

If the system is not classified this is not applicable.

- a) Review System Classification General Resource Profile BPX.DEFAULT.USER
Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource Reports option 3;4 Mask on
Profile=BPX.DEFAULT.USER and class=FACILITY.
- b) If system is classified or does not use the FTP socket application the Default User
and Default Group are not defined in the Application Data field in the
BPX.DEFAULT.USER resource in the FACILITY report, there is NO
FINDING.
- c) If the system is a non classified system, running the FTP socket application, and
has Default User and Default Group defined in the Application Data field in the
BPX.DEFAULT.USER resource in the FACILITY report, there is NO
FINDING.
- d) If (b) and (c) above are untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: 1. If system is classified a userid should not be defined in the application data field of the FACILITY report.

The sample commands below show the required security parameters required for the default user:

```
AG OEDFLTG SUPGROUP(ADMIN) OWNER(ADMIN) OMVS(GID(777777))
```

```
AU OEDFLTU DFLTGRP(OEDFLTG) NAME('OE DEFAULT USER') NOPASS  
OMVS(UID(99999) HOME('/u/oeflt') PROGRAM('/bin/echo')) -  
DATA('DEFAULT OMVSUSERID ADDED WITH SOER5')
```

RDEF FACILITY BPX.DEFAULT.USER APPLDATA('OEDFLTU/OEDFLTG') -
DATA('ADDED TO SUPPORT THE DEFAULT USER') UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN)

SETR RACLIST(FACILITY) REFRESH

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98415

Group Title: US000170

Rule ID: SV-107519r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000170](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX HFS MapName files security parameters are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that if the /etc/auto.master HFS FILE is used that each /etc/mapname file listed specifies setuid no and security yes, unless a letter justifying a specific exception is filed with the IAO.

a) Use Vanguard Analyzer option 3-Online Displays, Parmlib Analysis option L.
Browse the BPXPRMxx members

b) Review the logical parmlib data sets, example: SYS1.PARMLIB(BPXPRMxx),
for the following FILESYSTYPE entry:

FILESYSTYPE TYPE(AUTOMNT) ENTRYPOINT(BPXTAMD)

If the above entry is not found or is commented out in the BPXPRMxx
member(s), this is NOT APPLICABLE.

NOTE: The /etc/auto.master HFS file (and the use of Automount) is optional.
If the file does not exist, this is NOT APPLICABLE.

NOTE: The setuid parameter and the security parameter have a significant
security impact. For this reason these parameters must be explicitly specified
and not allowed to default.

c) If each MapName file specifies the setuid No and security Yes statements for
each automounted directory, there is NO FINDING.

d) If there is a deviation from the required values and documentation for the
deviation exists, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: security No disables security checking for file access. Security No is
only allowed on test and development domains. setuid Yes allows a user to run
under a different UID/GID identity. Justification documentation is required to
validate the use of setuid Yes.

e) If (c), or (d) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the settings in /etc/auto.master and /etc/mapname for z/OS UNIX security parameters and

ensure that the values conform to the specifications below.

The /etc/auto.master HFS file (and the use of Automount) is optional.

The setuid parameter and the security parameter have a significant security impact. For this reason these parameters must be explicitly specified and not be allowed to default.

Each MapName file will specify the setuid NO and security YES statements for each automounted

directory. If there is a deviation from the required values, documentation must exist for the deviation.

Security NO disables security checking for file access. Security NO is only allowed on test and development domains.

Setuid YES allows a user to run under a different UID/GID identity. Justification documentation is required to validate the use of setuid YES.

CCI: CCI-001762

Group ID (Vulid): V-98417

Group Title: US000180

Rule ID: SV-107521r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000180](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX security parameters for restricted network service(s) in /etc/inetd.conf are not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: Parameter settings in PARMLIB and /etc specify values for z/OS UNIX security controls. The parameters impact HFS data access and operating system services. Undesirable values can allow users to gain inappropriate privileges that could impact data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer or IAO will ensure that the restricted network services specified in the /etc/inetd.conf file listed in the table below are disabled, unless a letter justifying the use of the restricted network service is on file with the IAO.

RESTRICTED NETWORK SERVICES

Service	Port
Chargen	19
Daytime	13
Discard	9
Echo	7
Exec	512
finger	79
shell	514
time	37
login	513
smtp	25
timed	525
nameserver	
42	systat
11	uucp
540	netstat
15	talk
517	qotd
17 tftp	69

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14. Use the CD command to change to /etc directory and browse the inetd.conf file.
- b) If all the services in the table above are not found in or are commented out of the /etc/inetd.conf file, there is NO FINDING.

c) If any of the Restricted Network Services defined above is specified, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the settings in The /etc/inetd.conf file determine if every entry in the file represents a service that is actually in use. Services that are not in use must be disabled to reduce potential security exposures. The following services must be disabled in /etc/inetd.conf unless justified and documented with the IAO:

RESTRICTED NETWORK SERVICES

Service	Port
Chargen	19
Daytime	13
Discard	9
Echo	7
Exec	512
finger	79
shell	514
time	37
login	513
smtp	25
timed	525
nameserver	
42	systat
11	uucp
540	netstat
15	talk
517	qotd
17 tftp	69

/etc/inetd.conf

The /etc/inetd.conf file is used by the INETD daemon. It specifies how INETD is to handle service requests on network sockets. Specifically, there is one entry in inetd.conf for each service. Each service entry specifies several parameters. The login_name parameter is of special interest. It specifies the userid under which the forked daemon is to execute. This userid is defined to the ACP and it may require a UID(0) (i.e., superuser authority) value.

CCI: CCI-000382

CCI: CCI-001762

Group ID (Vulid): V-98419

Group Title: US000190

Rule ID: SV-107523r1_rule

Severity: CAT I

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000190](#)

Rule Title: UID(0) is improperly assigned.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that UID(0) is assigned only to system tasks such as the Z/OS UNIX kernel (i.e., OMVS or OMVSKERN), Z/OS UNIX daemons (e.g., inetd, syslogd, ftpd), and other system software daemons; to security administrators who create or maintain user account definitions; and to systems programming accounts dedicated to maintenance (e.g., SMP/E) of HFS-based components.

a) Review Vanguard Administrator User OMVS Segment Report option 3;5;9
Mask on UID =0

b) If UID(0) is assigned only to system tasks such as the Z/OS UNIX kernel (i.e., OMVS), Z/OS UNIX daemons (e.g., inetd, syslogd, ftpd), and other system software daemons; there is NO FINDING.

c) If UID(0) is assigned to security administrators who create or maintain user account definitions; and to systems programming accounts dedicated to maintenance (e.g., SMP/E) of HFS-based components, there is NO FINDING.

NOTE: The assignment of UID(0) confers full time superuser privileges. As discussed in the Z/OS STIG, this is not appropriate for personal user accounts. Access to the BPX.SUPERUSER resource is used to allow personal user accounts to gain short-term access to superuser privileges.

d) If UID(0) is assigned to non-systems or non-maintenance accounts, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will verify that UID(0) is defined as specified below:

UID(0) is assigned only to system tasks such as the z/OS UNIX kernel (i.e., OMVS), z/OS UNIX daemons (e.g., inetd, syslogd, ftpd), and other system software daemons.

UID(0) is assigned to security administrators who create or maintain user account definitions; and to systems programming accounts dedicated to maintenance (e.g., SMP/E) of HFS-based components..

NOTE: The assignment of UID(0) confers full time superuser privileges, this is not appropriate for personal user accounts. Access to the BPX.SUPERUSER resource is used to allow personal user accounts to gain shortterm access to superuser privileges.

CCI: CCI-000764

CCI: CCI-002235

Group ID (Vulid): V-98421

Group Title: US000200

Rule ID: SV-107525r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000200](#)

Rule Title: Attributes of z/OS UNIX user accounts are not defined properly

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer will ensure that the OMVSGRP group and / or the STCOMVS group are each defined to the security database with a unique GID in the range of 1-99.a)

a) Review Vanguard Administrator Group OMVS Segment report 3;5;22

NOTE: A site can choose to have both an OMVSGRP group and an STCOMVS group or combine the groups under one of these names.

b) If the OMVSGRP group and / or the STCOMVS group are each defined with a unique GID in the range of 1-99, there is NO FINDING.

c) If (b) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The Systems Programmer will ensure that the OMVSGRP group and / or the STCOMVS group are each defined to the security database with a unique GID in the range of 1-99.

OMVSGRP is the name suggested by IBM for all the required userids. STCOMVS is the standard name used at some sites for the userids that are associated with z/OS UNIX started tasks and daemons. These groups can be combined at the site s discretion.

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98423

Group Title: US000210

Rule ID: SV-107527r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000210](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX each group is not defined with a unique GID.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The IAO will ensure each group has a unique GID number.

a) Review Vanguard Administrator Group OMVS Segment report option: 3;5;22 sort on GID

NOTE: This check only applies to groups that include users of Z/OS UNIX (i.e., that have an OMVS segment defined).

b) If each group has a unique GID number, there is NO FINDING.

c) If more than one group has the same GID number, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will verify that each group has a unique GID number,

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98425

Group Title: US000220

Rule ID: SV-107529r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000220](#)

Rule Title: The user account for the z/OS UNIX kernel (OMVS) is not properly defined to the security database.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following reports produced by the ACP Data Collection:

ACF2

- ACF2CMDS.RPT(OMVSUSER)
- ACF2CMDS.RPT(LOGONIDS)

RACF

- RACFCMDS.RPT(LISTUSER)

TSS

- TSSCMDS.RPT(@ACIDS)

b) If OMVS is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING:

- 1) No access to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.)
- 2) Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
- 3) UID(0)
- 4) HOME directory specified as / 5) Shell program specified as /bin/sh

c) If OMVS is not defined as specified in (b) above, this is a FINDING

Fix Text: The systems programmer will verify that OMVS is defined as specified below:

- 1) No access to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.)
- 2) Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
- 3) UID(0)
- 4) HOME directory specified as /
- 5) Shell program specified as /bin/sh

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98427

Group Title: US000230

Rule ID: SV-107531r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000230](#)

Rule Title: The user account for the z/OS UNIX SUPERUSER userid must be properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

___STIG ID: ZUSS0045

Default Severity: Category II

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that the RMFGAT user account is properly defined in the security database.

RMFGAT is the userid for the Resource Measurement Facility (RMF) Monitor III Gatherer. If RMFGAT is not defined this is not applicable.

- a) Review Administrator User OMVS Segment Report 3;5;9 Mask on USERID=RMFGAT
- b) Enter an LV next to the UserID to display the user information. The default group will be located under GENERAL INFORMATION; the remainder of the information will be located under OMVS SEGMENT.
- c) If RMFGAT is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING:
 1. Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
 2. A unique, non-zero UID
 3. HOME directory specified as / 4. Shell program specified as /bin/sh
- d) If RMFGAT is not defined as specified in (b) above, this is a FINDING.

CCI: CCI-000764

Fix Text: Define the user ID identified in the BPXPRM00 SUPERUSER parameter as specified below:

- No access to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.)
- Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
- UID(0)
- HOME directory specified as /
- Shell program specified as /bin/sh

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98429

Group Title: US000240

Rule ID: SV-107533r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000240](#)

Rule Title: The user account for the z/OS UNIX (RMFGAT) is not properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

___STIG ID: ZUSS0044

Default Severity: Category II

The user account for the z/OS UNIX SUPERUSER userid must be properly defined.

- a) Review Vanguard Administrator USER OMVS Segment Report 3;5;9 Mask on USERID=BPXROOT
- b) Refer to system PARMLIB member BPXPRMxx (xx is determined by OMVS entry in IEASYS00.)
- c) If BPXROOT is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING:
 - 1. No access to interactive on-line facilities (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.)
 - 2. Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
 - 3. UID(0)
 - 4. HOME directory specified as / 5. Shell program specified as /bin/sh
- d) If BPXROOT is not defined as specified in (b) above, this is a FINDING.

CCI: CCI-000764

Fix Text: Define the RMFGAT user account as specified below:

- Default group specified as OMVSGRP or STCOMVS
- A unique, non-zero UID
- HOME directory specified as /
- Shell program specified as /bin/sh

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98431

Group Title: US000250

Rule ID: SV-107535r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000250](#)

Rule Title: z/OS UNIX user accounts are not properly defined.

Vulnerability Discussion: User identifiers (ACF2 logonids, RACF userids, and Top Secret ACIDs), groups, and started tasks that use z/OS UNIX facilities are defined to an ACP with attributes including UID and GID. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that each user account is defined with a unique UID number (except for UID(0) users), a unique HOME directory (except for UID(0) and other system task accounts), and shell program specified as "/bin/sh", "/bin/tcsh", or "/bin/false."

a) Review Vanguard Administrator USER OMVS SEGMENT report option 3;5;9.

Sort by UID.

b) If each user account is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING:

1. A unique UID number (except for UID(0) users)
2. A unique HOME directory (except for UID(0) and other system task accounts)
3. Shell program specified as /bin/sh , /bin/tcsh , /bin/echo , or /bin/false

NOTE: The shell program must have one of the specified values. The HOME directory must have a value (i.e., not be allowed to default).

c) If any user account is not defined as specified in (b) above, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The systems programmer will verify that each user account is defined as specified below:

NOTE: This check only applies to users of z/OS UNIX (i.e., users with an OMVS profile defined).

- 1) A unique UID number (except for UID(0) users)
- 2) A unique HOME directory (except for UID(0) and other system task accounts)
- 3) Shell program specified as /bin/sh , /bin/tcsh , /bin/echo , or /bin/false

NOTE: The shell program must have one of the specified values. The HOME directory must have a value (i.e., not be allowed to default).

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98433

Group Title: US000260

Rule ID: SV-107537r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [US000260](#)

Rule Title: Attributes of z/OS UNIX user accounts used for account modeling must be defined in accordance with security requirements.

Vulnerability Discussion: RACF userids that use z/OS UNIX must be properly configured. If these attributes are not correctly defined, data access or command privilege controls could be compromised.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

N/A

Check Content:

The Systems Programmer and IAO will ensure that the below bulleted options are enforced for FTP socket applications using shared OMVS segments.

- * Application of the APAR PQ63326 to control FTP access to UNIX files is required.
- * Collection of SMF type 80 records to track user access to OMVS default UID.
- * Use of the OMVS default UID will not be allowed on any classified system.* The definition of the OMVS default user will be restricted to a non-0 UID, a nonwritable home directory, such as "\" root, and a non-executable, but existing, binary file, "/bin/false" or "/bin/echo."

NOTE: This check only applies to the OMVS default user. If the OMVS default user is not defined in the Application Data field in the BPX.DEFAULT.USER resource in the FACILITY report, this is NOT APPLICABLE.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator General Resource Profile report mask on Profile=BPX.DEFAULT.USER and Class=facility. . Use the LV command to review this profile document the APPL Data I.E. USERID/GROUPID for later use.

b) Repeat step a), masking on Profile=BPX.UNIQUE.USER.

c) Using Vanguard Administrator User Report mask on USER id=USERID (the OMVS default user) documented above. Use the VRC command to view the user profile. Find the OMVS Segment Information and review. If OMVS default user account is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING.

1. A non-writable HOME directory
2. Shell program specified as /bin/echo , or /bin/false

d) Repeat step c), masking on USER id=USERID (the OMVS unique user) documented above in step b). If OMVS unique user account is defined as follows, there is NO FINDING.

1. A non-writable HOME directory
2. Shell program specified as /bin/echo, or /bin/false

NOTE: The shell program must have one of the specified values. The HOME directory must have a value (i.e., not be allowed to default).

e) If the user account is not defined as specified in (b) above, this is a FIND

Fix Text: Use of the OMVS default UID will not be allowed on any classified system. This is not an issue when using BPX.UNIQUE.USER.

Define user id used for OMVS account modeling with a non-0 UID, a non-writable home directory, such as "\" root, and a non-executable, but existing, binary file, "/bin/false" or /bin/echo.

```
AG OEDFLTG SUPGROUP(ADMIN) OWNER(ADMIN) OMVS(GID(777777))
AU OEDFLTU DFLTGRP(OEDFLTG) NAME('OE DEFAULT USER') NOPASS
OMVS(UID(99999) HOME('/u/oeflt') PROGRAM('/bin/echo')) -
DATA('DEFAULT OMVSUSERID ADDED WITH SOERS5')
RDEF FACILITY BPX.DEFAULT.USER APPLDATA('OEDFLTU/OEDFLTG') -
DATA('ADDED TO SUPPORT THE DEFAULT USER') UACC(NONE) OWNER(ADMIN)
SETR RACLIST(FACILITY) REFRESH
```

CCI: CCI-000764

Group ID (Vulid): V-98435

Group Title: UT000010

Rule ID: SV-107539r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [UT000010](#)

Rule Title: The startup user account for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server is not defined properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: The z/OS UNIX Telnet Server (i.e., otelnetd) requires a UID(0) to provide its system services. After the user enters their userid and password, otelnetd switches to the security context of the users account. Because the otelnetd account is only used until authentication is completed, there is no need to require a unique account for this function. This limits the number of privileged accounts defined to the ACP and reduces the exposure potential. Failure to properly define and control otelnetd could lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the startup user account for otelnetd is the account defined for the Z/OS UNIX kernel.

- a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX File Manger option 14 use the CD command to change to the /etc directory and the browse command to review /etd/inetd.conf file.

```
#=====
# service | sock | prot | wait/ | user | server | server program
# name | type | | nowait | | program | arguments
#=====
otelnet stream tcp nowait OMVSKERN /usr/sbin/otelnetd otelnetd m
```

- b) If the otelnetd command specifies OMVS or OMVSKERN as the user, there is NO FINDING. See example above

- c) If the otelnetd command specifies any user other than OMVS or OMVSKERN, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the otelnetd startup command in the inetd.conf file and ensure the account is defined for the z/OS UNIX kernel.

The user account used at the startup of otelnetd is specified in the inetd configuration file. This account is used to perform the identification and authentication of the user requesting the session. Because the account is only used until user authentication is completed, there is no need for a unique account for this function. The z/OS UNIX kernel account can be used.

CCI: CCI-000213

Group ID (Vulid): V-98437

Group Title: UT000020

Rule ID: SV-107541r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [UT000020](#)

Rule Title: HFS objects for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server will be properly protected.

Vulnerability Discussion: HFS directories and files of the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server provide the configuration and executable properties of this product. Failure to properly secure these objects may lead to unauthorized access resulting in the compromise of the integrity and availability of the operating system environment, ACP, and customer data.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IACControls: DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECCD-1, ECCD-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the permission bits and user audit bits for HFS objects that are part of the Z/OS UNIX Telnet Server component is configured according to the settings in the following table:

z/OS UNIX TELNET SERVER HFS OBJECT SECURITY SETTINGS

DIRECTORY or FILE	PERMISSION BITS	USER
-------------------	-----------------	------

AUDIT BITS

/usr/sbin/otelnetsd 1740 fff

/etc/banner 0744 faf

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX file manager option 14 open files browse

files above and review Permission bits and USER Audit bits.

b) If the HFS permission bits and user audit bits for each directory and file match or are more restrictive than the specified settings listed in the table above, there is
NO FINDING.

NOTE: The /usr/sbin/otelnetsd object is a symbolic link to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/otelnetsd. The permission and user audit bits on the target of the symbolic link must have the required settings.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive: 7 rwx(least restrictive)

6 rw3

-wx

2 w

5 r-x

4 r-l

--x

0 --- (most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows: f log for failed access attempts a log for failed and successful access
-no auditing

c) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: The IAO with the assistance of a systems programmer with UID(0) and/or SUPERUSER access, will review the UNIX permission bits and user audit bits on the HFS directories and files for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server. Ensure they conform to the specifications below:

z/OS UNIX TELNET Server HFS Object Security Settings

File	Permission Bits	User Audit Bits
/usr/sbin/otelnetsd	1740	fff
/etc/banner	0744	faf

NOTE:

The /usr/sbin/otelnetsd object is a symbolic link to /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/otelnetsd. The permission and user audit bits on the target of the symbolic link must have the required settings.

The following represents a hierarchy for permission bits from least restrictive to most restrictive:

7	rwX	(least restrictive)
6	rw3	
	-wX	
2	-w-	
5	r-X	
4	r-l	
	--X	
0	---	(most restrictive)

The possible audit bits settings are as follows:

f log for failed access attempts a
log for failed and successful access -
no auditing

The following commands can be used (from a user account with an effective UID(0)) to update the permission bits and audit bits:

```
chmod 1740 /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/otelnetsd
chaudit rwx=f /usr/lpp/tcpip/sbin/otelnetsd
chmod 0744 /etc/banner
chaudit w=sf,rx+f /etc/banner
```

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-000225

CCI: CCI-001499

CCI: CCI-002234

Group ID (Vulid): V-98439

Group Title: UT000030

Rule ID: SV-107543r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [UT000030](#)

Rule Title: The warning banner for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server is not specified or not properly specified.

Vulnerability Discussion: A logon banner can be used to inform users about the environment during the initial logon. Logon banners are used to warn users against unauthorized entry and the possibility of legal action for unauthorized users, and advise all users that system use constitutes consent to monitoring. Failure to display a logon warning banner without this type of information could adversely impact the ability to prosecute unauthorized users and users who abuse the system.

Documentable: YES

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, ECWM-1

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command includes the options -D login and -c 900, where:

-D login indicates that messages should be written to the syslogd facility for login and logout activity

-c 900 indicates that the Telnet session should be terminated after 15 minutes of inactivity.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command does not include the option -h, where: -h indicates that the logon banner should not be displayed.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX File Manager option 14. User the CD command to change to the etc directory and the browse the file /etc/inetd.conf

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the otelnetd startup command:

1. Option -D login is included on the otelnetd command.
2. Option -c 900 is included on the otelnetd command.

NOTE: 900 indicates a session timeout value of 15 minutes and is currently the maximum value allowed.

3. Option -h is not included on the otelnetd command.

c) If all of the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Review the /etc/banner file and ensure the text specifies a logon banner in accordance with DISA requirements.

DOD requires that a logon warning banner be displayed. Although the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server does not support the display of a message before the logon prompt, it is possible to display a message immediately after logon.

CCI: CCI-000048

CCI: CCI-001384

CCI: CCI-001385

CCI: CCI-001386

CCI: CCI-001387

CCI: CCI-001388

Group ID (Vulid): V-98441

Group Title: UT000040

Rule ID: SV-107545r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [UT000040](#)

Rule Title: Startup parameters for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server are not specified properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: The z/OS UNIX Telnet Server (i.e., otelnetd) provides interactive access to the z/OS UNIX shell. During the initialization process, startup parameters are read to define the characteristics of each otelnetd instance. Some of these parameters have an impact on system security. Failure to specify the appropriate command options could result in degraded security. This exposure may result in unauthorized access impacting data integrity or the availability of some system services.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:
DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command includes the options -D login and -c 900, where:

-D login indicates that messages should be written to the syslogd facility for login and logout activity

-c 900 indicates that the Telnet session should be terminated after 15 minutes of inactivity.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command does not include the option -h, where: -h indicates that the logon banner should not be displayed.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX File Manager option 14. User the CD command to change to the etc directory and the browse the file /etc/inetd.conf

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the otelnetd startup command:

1. Option -D login is included on the otelnetd command.
2. Option -c 900 is included on the otelnetd command.

NOTE: 900 indicates a session timeout value of 15 minutes and is currently the maximum value allowed.

If Option -D login is included on the otelnetd command, this is not a finding.

If Option -c 900 is included on the otelnetd command, this is not a finding.

NOTE: "900" indicates a session timeout value of "15" minutes and is currently the maximum value allowed.

Fix Text: Review the startup parameters in the inetd.conf file for otelnetd and ensure they conform to the specifications below.

The otelnetd startup command includes the options -D login and -c 900, where:

-D login indicates that messages should be written to the syslogd facility for login and logout activity

-c 900 indicates that the Telnet session should be terminated after 15 minutes of inactivity.

NOTE: The 900 is the maximum value; any value between 1 and 900 is acceptable.

The otelnetd startup command should not include the option -h, where:

-h indicates that the logon banner should not be displayed.

CCI: CCI-000366

Group ID (Vulid): V-98443

Group Title: UT000050

Rule ID: SV-107547r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [UT000050](#)

Rule Title: Startup parameters for the z/OS UNIX Telnet Server are not specified properly.

Vulnerability Discussion: The z/OS UNIX Telnet Server (i.e., otelnetd) provides interactive access to the z/OS UNIX shell. During the initialization process, startup parameters are read to define the characteristics of each otelnetd instance. Some of these parameters have an impact on system security.

Failure to specify the appropriate command options could result in degraded security.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2

Check Content:

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command includes the options -D login and -c 900, where:

-D login indicates that messages should be written to the syslogd facility for login and logout activity
-c 900 indicates that the Telnet session should be terminated after 15 minutes of inactivity.

The systems programmer responsible for supporting ICS will ensure that the otelnetd startup command does not include the option -h, where: -h indicates that the logon banner should not be displayed.

a) Using Vanguard Administrator UNIX File Manager option 14. User the CD command to change to the etc directory and the browse the file /etc/inetd.conf

b) Ensure the following items are in effect for the otelnetd startup command:

1. Option -D login is included on the otelnetd command.
2. Option -c 900 is included on the otelnetd command.

NOTE: 900 indicates a session timeout value of 15 minutes and is currently the maximum value allowed.

3. Option -h is not included on the otelnetd command.

Enter /etc/ for a pathname - you may need to issue a CD /etc/
select FILE NAME inetd.conf

If Option -h is included on the otelnetd command, this is a finding.

c) If all of the items in (b) are true, there is NO FINDING.

d) If any item in (b) is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text:

Review the startup parameters in the inetd.conf file for otelnetd and ensure they conform to the specifications below.

The otelnetd startup command includes the options -D login and -c 900, where:

-D login indicates that messages should be written to the syslogd facility for login and logout activity

-c 900 indicates that the Telnet session should be terminated after 15 minutes of inactivity.

NOTE: The 900 is the maximum value; any value between 1 and 900 is acceptable.

The otelnetd startup command should not include the option -h, where:

-h indicates that the logon banner should not be displayed.

CCI: CCI

CCI: CCI-001384CCI

CCI: CCI-001385CCI

CCI: CCI-001386CCI

CCI: CCI-001387CCI

CCI: CCI-001388

Group ID (Vulid): V-98445

Group Title: VT000010

Rule ID: SV-107551r1_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [VT000010](#)

Rule Title: The System datasets used to support the VTAM network are not properly secured.

Vulnerability Discussion: Ensure that RACF data set rules for all VTAM system data sets restrict access to only network systems programming staff. These data sets include libraries containing VTAM load modules and exit routines, and VTAM start options and definition statements.

Failure to properly control VTAM datasets could potentially compromise the network operations.

Responsibility: Systems Programmer

IAControls: N/A

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following item gathered from the VTAM Systems Programmer s Worksheet in the Preliminary Information Worksheets(U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc):

___ 1. A list of data set names containing all VTAM start options, configuration lists, network resource definitions, commands, procedures, exit routines, all SMP/E TLIBs, and all SMP/E DLIBs used for installation and in development/production environments.

b) Generate a report for security verification using Analyzer.1. Select option 4 Batch Reports from the Analyzer main menu

2. Select option B Sensitive and Critical Data Sets Analysis

3. Enter R on line item User defined list

4. Provide a dataset name or your choice which will include the names of the data sets gathered from step a) above.

Note: This may be a sequential data set or a PDS and member

5. Specify the options as listed here.

AC(1) module list ===NO Duplicate Module Analysis ===NO

RACF detail ===YES Exceptions only ===NO

RACF Group detail ===YES

Search criteria ===NO

Sort criteria ===NO

6. Press enter to invoke the JCL Submit Processing

7. Enter S to submit the batch report

8. Review the report for findings

- b) Ensure that RACF data set rules for all VTAM system data sets restrict access to only network systems programming staff. These data sets include libraries containing VTAM load modules and exit routines, and VTAM start options and definition statements.
- c) If (c) above is true, there is NO FINDING.
- d) If (c) above is untrue, this is a FINDING.

Fix Text: Data Set Controls

Ensure that RACF data set rules for all VTAM system data sets restrict access to only network systems programming staff. These data sets include libraries containing VTAM load modules and exit routines, and VTAM start options and definition statements.

The following sample RACF commands show proper definitions/permissions for VTAM datasets:

```
AD 'SYS1.VTAM*.*' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS1) -  
AUDIT(SUCCESS(UPDATE) FAILURES(READ)) -  
DATA('IBM VTAM DS PROFILE: REF SRR PDI ZVTM0018')  
PE 'SYS1.VTAM.*' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

```
AD 'SYS1.VTAMLIB.*' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS1) -  
AUDIT(SUCCESS(UPDATE) FAILURES(READ)) -  
DATA('IBM VTAM APF DS PROFILE: REF SRR PDI ZVTM0018')  
PE 'SYS1.VTAMLIB.*' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

```
AD 'SYS1.VTAM.SISTCLIB.*' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS1) -  
AUDIT(SUCCESS(UPDATE) FAILURES(READ)) -  
DATA('IBM VTAM APF DS PROFILE: REF SRR PDI ZVTM0018')  
PE 'SYS1.VTAM.SISTCLIB.*' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

```
AD 'SYS3.VTAM.*' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS3) -  
AUDIT(SUCCESS(UPDATE) FAILURES(READ)) -  
DATA('VTAM CUSTOMIZED DS: REF SRR PDI ZVTM0018')  
PE 'SYS3.VTAM.*' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

```
AD 'SYS3.VTAMLIB.*' UACC(NONE) OWNER(SYS3) -  
AUDIT(SUCCESS(UPDATE) FAILURES(READ)) -  
DATA('IBM VTAM APF DS PROFILE: REF SRR PDI ZVTM0018')  
PE 'SYS3.VTAMLIB.*' ID(<syspau>) ACC(A)
```

SETR GENERIC(DATASET) REFRESH

CCI: CCI-000213

CCI: CCI-001499

Group ID (Vulid): V-98447

Group Title: VT000020

Rule ID: SV-7250r2_rule

Severity: CAT II

Rule Version (STIG-ID): [VT000020](#)

Rule Title: The VTAM USSTAB definitions are being used for unsecured terminals

Vulnerability Discussion: VTAM options and definitions are used to define VTAM operational capabilities. They must be strictly controlled. Unauthorized users could override or change start options or network definitions. Failure to properly control VTAM resources could potentially compromise the network operations.

Responsibility: Information Assurance Officer IAControls:

DCCS-1, DCCS-2, IAAC-1

Check Content:

a) Refer to the following items gathered from the VTAM Systems Programmer s Worksheet in the Preliminary Information Worksheets in U_zOS_STIG_INSTRUCTION.doc:

___ 1. Documentation regarding terminal naming standards.

___ 2. Documentation of all procedures controlling terminal logons to the system.

___ 3. A complete list of all USS commands used by terminal users to log on to the system.

___ 4. A complete list of all terminals and/or terminal types controlled by LOGAPPL definitions only.

___ 5. Members and data set names containing USSTAB and LOGAPPL definitions of all terminals that can log on to the system (e.g., SYS1.VTAMLST).

___ 6. Members and data set names containing logon mode parameters.

b) If USSTAB definitions are only used for secure terminals (e.g., terminals that are locally attached to the host or connected to the host via secure leased lines), there is NO FINDING.

Fix Text: The Systems programmer and IAO will verify that USSTAB definitions are only used for secure terminals.

Only terminals that are locally attached to the host or connected to the host via secure leased lines located in a secured area. Only authorized personnel may enter the area where secure terminals are located.

USSTAB or LOGAPPL definitions are used to control logon from secure terminals. These terminals can log on directly to any VTAM application (e.g., TSO, CICS, etc.) of their choice and bypass Session Manager services. Secure terminals are usually locally attached to the host or connected to the host via a private LAN without access to an external network. Only authorized personnel may enter the area where secure terminals are located.

CCI: CCI-001499

UNCLASSIFIED